MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE INFANTRY MORTAR PLATOON, SECTION, AND SQUAD

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
APRIL 2005

**This publication is available at
Army Knowledge Online (www.us.army.mil) and
General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine
Digital Library at (http://www.train.army.mil)**

[1]ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 7-90-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 1 April 2005

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

Mission Training Plan for the Infantry Mortar Platoon, Section, and Squad

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface

This mission training plan (MTP) is designed for the Infantry mortar platoon, section, and squad. It provides Active and Reserve Component commanders and staff with a descriptive, mission-oriented program for training the unit to perform its critical wartime missions. Although a unit's missions and deployment assignments affect the commander's final set of training priorities, the training and evaluation outlines (tasks) in this MTP are the main ones that the Infantry battalion must be able to execute with proficiency. The unit is expected to train all tasks to at least standard. (Standards may be raised, but not lowered.)

This change updates 19 mortar tasks with information about the Mortar Fire Control System (MFCS).

The proponent for this publication is the United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). The preparing agency is the US Army Infantry School. Submit recommendations for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended changes to Publications and Blank Forms) or in any clearly written format and send them by US Mail to Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-ATD, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5007 or by e-mail to doctrine@benning.army.mil. Feedback may be provided on DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback).

Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 1
Unit Training

1-1. <u>General.</u> This mission training plan (MTP) provides platoon and squad leaders with a platoon tactical training and evaluation program. It also provides guidance on how and what (key missions) to train. The details depend on many factors, including—

- The unit's mission-essential task list.
- The training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- The unit's training priorities.
- Training resources and areas available.

1-2. <u>Supporting Material.</u> This MTP provides:

- Training information.
- Training matrixes.
- Mission outlines (company and below).
- Training plans (battalion and higher).
- Example training exercise examples.
- Comprehensive training and evaluation outlines.
- Evaluation information.
- Combined arms training strategy (battalion and above).
- Example operation order with threat statement.
- Other appropriate proponent-specific information.

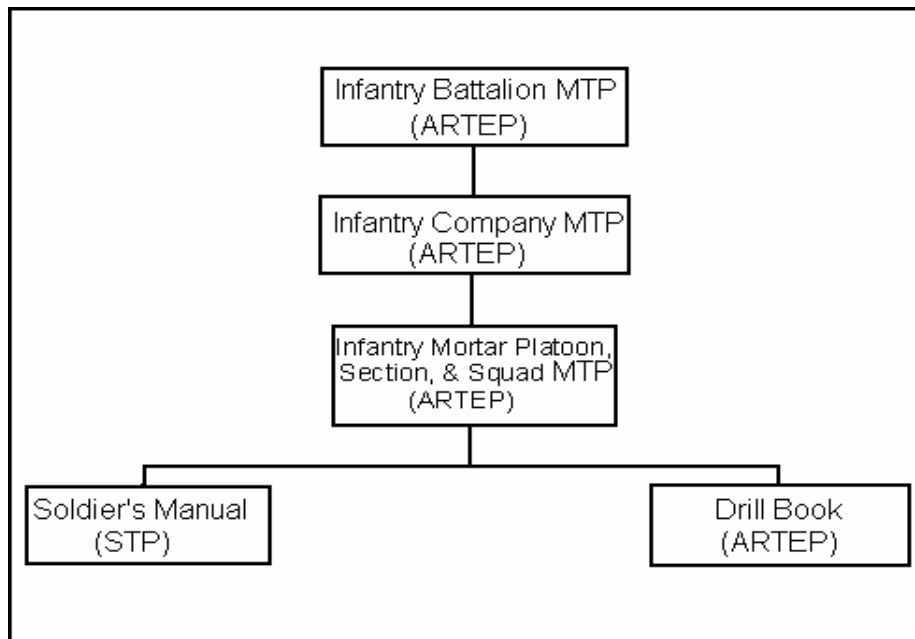**1-3. <u>Mission Training Plan Echelon Relationship.</u>** See Figure 1-1.

Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship.

1-4. Contents. This MTP consists of the following—

a. *Chapter 1, Unit Training.* Explains organization and use of this MTP.

b. *Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.* Relates missions to tasks.

c. *Chapter 3. Mission Outlines*. Relates (graphically) critical wartime missions to subtasks.

d. *Chapter 4, Training Exercises.* Provides information on developing training exercises. Also provides example situational training exercises (STXs) for use by leaders in developing training exercises for their units.

e. *Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.* Provides (by skill level) the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the tasks that the platoon must master to perform critical wartime operations. Each T&EO applies to one skill level only, but can apply to multiple operations.

f. *Chapter 6, External Evaluation.* Provides tools for evaluating the unit's performance.

g. *Appendix A, Description of Combined Arms Training Strategy.*

h. *Appendix B, Exercise Operation Orders.*

i. *Appendix C, Enemy Analysis.*

j. *Appendix D, Digital Supplement.*

1-5. Missions and Tasks. Full-spectrum operations include offensive, defensive, stability, and support operations. Each operation has certain collective and leader tasks that the platoon must execute, and each of these requires training.

a. *Collective Tasks*. Collective tasks are trained IAW FMs 7-0 and 7-1, and in applicable MTP(s), Chapters 4, 5, and 6. Collective tasks may be trained separately or grouped. Platoon collective tasks can combine with those at other operational levels to form more complex training exercises (see Chapter 4 for example STXs). Leaders select tasks IAW FM 7-0 and Chapters 3 and 6 of this MTP.

b. *Leader Tasks*. Leader tasks are trained IAW Soldier's manuals. Selected leader tasks support the platoon's critical wartime operations. Leaders train on the full range of Army training exercises, including map exercises (MAPEXs) and tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs).

1-6. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on nine training principles from FM 7-0, summarized as follows:

a. *Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team*. Army doctrine emphasizes teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together. Leaders must regularly practice cross-attachment with all combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.

b. *Train as You Fight*. A unit that trains as it fights will *fight as it is trained*. Soldiers remember only what they did the last time they performed a task--correctly or incorrectly. To ensure that they perform all tasks correctly in combat, they (and their units) must perform them to established standards. Leaders must rigidly enforce this practice. Because the weather and terrain faced in combat is unpredictable, training should be conducted under varying conditions that are both realistic and progressively challenging.

c. *Use Appropriate Doctrine*. Soldiers have no time to learn nonstandard procedures. They must learn correctly from the start. Units perform tasks IAW ARTEPs (MTPs and drill books), SMs, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. This MTP conforms to doctrine published in FM 3-21.9, FM 3-21.11, and ARTEP 7-12-MTP.

d. *Use Performance-Oriented Training*. To achieve and sustain proficiency, the platoon and squad must conduct frequent hands-on training and practice.

e. *Train to Challenge*. The best training is realistic and both mentally and physically difficult. It should foster initiative and motivate Soldiers to learn.

f. *Train to Sustain Proficiency*. s only sustain the individual and collective skills that they practice. Using this MTP, leaders develop a training plan that allows time for practice of previously trained tasks and missions.

g. *Train Using Multi-Echelon Techniques*. The most efficient way to train and sustain a METL is to bring everyone and everything together and train all at once.

h. *Train to Maintain*. Maintenance is vital to training. Equipment must be clean and in optimum condition for Soldiers to use it proficiently. Soldiers and leaders must maintain all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness for training or combat.

i. *Make Commanders The Primary Trainers*. Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their Soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organizations.

1-7. <u>Training Strategy.</u> The training program developed and executed by the unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, is a component of the Army's combined arms training strategy (CATS, described in Appendix A). Leaders consider the following when developing a unit training strategy:

a. *Descriptive Strategies*. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the leader with descriptive lists for training. These strategies reflect optimal ways to train to standard. However, many Army units lack the resources to train this way.

b. *Role of the Platoon*. The platoon and squad training strategy consist ot three strategies: maneuver, gunnery, and s. When these strategies are integrated with the training tasks in the MTP, they complete and focus the platoon training strategy. They also support training to standard*.

(1) **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy provides a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events. It also shows the resources required to support them.

(2) **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy provides an annual training plan. It also provides separate strategies for each of the unit's individual and crew-served weapons (IAW DA Pam 350-38 or the appropriate FM).

(3) **Strategy.** The strategy provides an annual plan with required resources. This supports training and sustaining individual Soldier skills.

c. *Training Gates*. Vital to the unit's training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. These are training events that must be conducted to standard before the unit may advance to a more complex or resource-intensive event or task. Training events follow the "crawl, walk, run" training sequence. For example, if the unit's training strategy calls for a field training exercise (FTX), and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, then the unit must train to standard on all STX tasks before proceeding to the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clear and measurable so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the s or units. After assessing his METL and his unit's

training status, the commander selects tasks for collective training and designates these training gates.

d. *Standard Army Training System*. The Standard Army Training System (SATS) provides automated tools for implementing the training management doctrine in FM 7-0 and related manuals. SATS helps commanders develop the METL as well as the training strategies, plans, and schedules. It also gives them a platform to coordinate activities, project required resources, record expended resources, assess the execution of a collective task and METL, and assess operational readiness. CATS data are available at different points in SATS.

Training Note: The SATS database contains many MTPs and STPs. Access to these require the leader to use the SATS software and data disk (CD-ROM). For more information or to order, write to the US Army Training Support Center, ATTN: ATISD, Fort Eustis, Virginia 23605-5166, or call DSN 927-4166 or commercial (804) 878-4166.

1-8. Conducting Training. Effective training requires the personal time, energy, and guidance of commanders, who must assess it at all levels. Each commander emphasizes training one level down and evaluating two levels down. For example, battalion commanders train company commanders with their companies and evaluate platoon leaders with their platoons. Company commanders train platoon leaders with their platoons and evaluate section, squad, team, and crew leaders with their units. This MTP helps leaders plan, prepare, and execute this training logically and efficiently. A summary of the procedures and considerations for each step follows:

a. *Plan*. Centralized planning links the METL to battle-focused training, in that it aligns training priorities with wartime requirements. Although other training requirements exist, battle focus helps the leader narrow his planning scope to wartime mission-essential tasks. In training, as in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution.

(1) Platoon training plans involve company, platoon, and squad leaders.

(a) The company commander is the primary trainer of all the platoons within the company. He is responsible for developing a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events such as FTXs and STXs. Based on the unit's METL, the commander initially assesses the entire company to identify systemic weaknesses. He then develops a training focus and specifies the individual and collective tasks he needs to train and evaluate.

(b) The platoon leader focuses on leader and collective training. Platoons should perform all collective tasks in accordance with (IAW) this MTP, FM 3-21.8 (7-8), and unit tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs). To accomplish this, platoons can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in company training. These exercises can increase confidence and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the platoon leader can use OPORD drills to ensure leaders understand the tasks they must execute.

(2) In developing the unit training plan, leaders at all levels should follow FMs 7-0 and 7-1.

(3) This MTP provides additional support.

(a) Chapter 3 includes examples of mission outlines to help leaders develop training programs that reflect their individual METLs. Leaders can adjust these plans to ensure that the exercises meet their needs.

(b) Chapter 4 includes outlines for example exercises.

(c) Chapter 5 contains T&EOs for collective tasks that support critical wartime operations.

(d) Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning and conducting evaluations of platoon training exercises.

(4) Time prohibits the training of all tasks. Leaders must choose those that require training. They focus on their units' largest operational challenges and most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, each platoon leader should meet with subordinate leaders to analyze training requirements and choose tasks. Doing this can also help identify weak areas.

(5) Once the leaders choose the tasks, they prepare a training schedule in which they:

(a) List the tasks by priority and training frequency.

(b) Determine the time required.

(c) Decide how to use multi-echelon training.

(d) Decide where to train.

(e) Decide who will be responsible for what. (The leader of the element being trained must always be involved in this decision.)

(f) Organize the platoon's needs into blocks of time and required training resources such as ammunition, multiple-integrated laser engagement system (MILES) equipment, and suitable training areas.

(6) The platoon leader submits to the company commander, his list of tasks, related training events, and resources needed. In doing so, he also provides company headquarters with sufficient time for acquisition and coordination. The company coordinates resource requirements with the battalion.

b. *Train and Certify Leaders*. This is the most important step in training, and it applies to all trainers, evaluators, and leaders involved in unit training.

(1) The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team directly affect the quality of training and the level of proficiency that units gain at the training site. Before executing training, unit leaders certify all trainers and subordinate leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency to train and evaluate the unit. To do so, unit leaders use a series of leader professional-development sessions followed by certification exercises, TEWTs, or examinations. The examinations can take the form of written tests, sand table evaluations, or both.

Training Note: Trainers should have held the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate.

(2) Before the platoon takes part in a collective training exercise, battalion and company commanders ensure that the platoon leader is able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the team's collective tasks. The platoon leader then trains his subordinate leaders on the individual tasks required to support the collective tasks.

c. *Reconnoiter the Site*. After trainers and evaluators are certified, the unit leader and the evaluation team must reconnoiter the area where the exercise will occur. They also start developing graphic control measures. The unit leader and the evaluation team analyze terrain to identify all key terrain as well as:

- STX lanes.
- Opposing force positions.
- Assembly areas.
- Leader training sites.

- After-action review sites.
- Logistical support locations.
- Command post locations.
- Retraining areas.

d. *Complete the Plan*. Completing the plan includes several actions that transform the commander's intent and concept and the platoon concept into the platoon OPORD. These actions include preparing overlays, refining the indirect-fire list, completing CSS and command and control (C2) requirements, and updating the tentative plan based on the reconnaissance or situational awareness updates. It also allows the platoon leader to prepare the site, media, and materials he will need to brief his OPORD to his subordinates. Completing the plan allows the platoon leader to finalize coordination with other units or the commander before he issues the OPORD to his subordinates.

e. *Issue the Order*. The OPORD precisely and concisely explains the platoon leader's intent, and his concept of how he wants the squads to accomplish the mission. The OPORD must contain nothing that could obscure these things. The platoon leader must ensure his squads know exactly what to do, when to do it, and how the platoon must work together to accomplish the mission and stay consistent with the intentions of the commander.

f. *Rehearse*. The value of this step should never be underestimated. Rehearsals are a critical part of every training exercise. Units must never bypass rehearsals to save time or resources. The company commander and platoon leaders plan for platoon rehearsals and ensure they are conducted as parts of the troop-leading procedures. A well-planned and efficiently run rehearsal can accomplish the following:

(1) Reinforce earlier training and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.

(2) Reveal weaknesses or problems in the plan.

(3) Synchronize the actions of the platoon.

(4) Confirm coordination between the platoon and adjacent units.

(5) Improve each leader's understanding of:

- Concept of the operation.
- Fire plan.
- Anticipated contingencies.
- Possible actions and reactions for situations that may arise during the operation.

g. *Execute*. The platoon should initiate a training exercise only when it clearly understands how to execute the mission. After the rehearsals end, the trainer either allows the platoon to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, and immediately following the exercise, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the after-action review (AAR). Evaluations are conducted based on the GO or NO-GO performance measures in Chapter 5 of this MTP. The trainer rates the participants on each task trained during the exercise.

h. *Conduct the After-Action Review*. At the end of the exercise, the platoon receives a complete AAR from the trainer. The AAR, which focuses on the training objectives and standards, is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review allows training participants to discover what happened, why it happened, and how they can improve the platoon's performance. Based on this performance, the trainer tells the commander (next within the chain of command) whether or not he recommends that the team retrain to meet the standards.

i.   *Retrain*. Based on the evaluation results, the platoon must retrain each task for which it receives a NO-GO. Trainers and leaders develop their training program to meet these specific requirements. Then, they can reevaluate the team, either on the spot or later on.

Training Note: Battle focus is the process of planning peacetime training based on wartime missions. It is critical to effective training as it guides: the planning, resource allocation, selection of tasks to train (mission-essential only), execution, and assessment of the platoon's training programs, and it ensures that the unit trains as it fights. Time and resource constraints naturally prohibit units from attaining proficiency to standard on *every* task. However, focusing on mission-essential tasks allows for a successful training program.

1-9. Force Protection (Safety). Risk assessment is the process of thinking about how to make operations safe without compromising the mission. Unit leaders must continuously assess training risks to prevent the unnecessary loss of Soldiers and equipment. Degrees of risk vary with conditions. Leaders might ask themselves, for example, have the Soldiers done this training before? Will this be the first time they have participated in this training? Will they participate in this training at night? Are the Soldiers fatigued? In reality, risk management is smart decision-making.

a.   A well-trained unit is normally accident free. However, accidents can occur through no fault of the Soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from inadequately trained, unsupervised, or complacent personnel.

b.   Training must be tough, realistic, and safe. Unit leaders must consider the following points as they integrate risk assessment into their training:

- Accept only necessary risks.
- Make risk decisions at the proper level.
- Accept risks if mission benefits outweigh the costs.

c.   The commander is the safety officer, but all Soldiers and leaders are responsible for safe training. All leaders must:

(1) Identify the risks using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, available troops and support, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).

(2) Assess possible loss, cost, and probability.

(3) Make decisions and develop controls to reduce risks.

(4) Implement controls by integrating them into plans, orders, TSOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

(5) Supervise and enforce safety controls and standards at all times. Leaders should make on-the-spot corrections when they observe any unsafe act.

d.   To enhance the overall safety practices of Soldiers during training, leaders use the safety checklist of the US Army Safety Center, Fort Rucker, Alabama along with local unit safety checklists.

1-10. Environmental Protection. Environmental planning includes identifying environmental risks posed by an operation and considering ways to reduce those risks during long, short, and near-term planning. All leaders, trainers, and Soldiers must comply with the environmental laws and regulations. The leader must identify the environmental risks associated with training individual and collective tasks. Trainers must work to reduce and avoid damage caused by realistic training to training areas and the environment. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. *Identify Hazards*. Identify the potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of the factors of METT-TC. This procedure requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water or for destroying cultural or historical artifacts.

b. *Assess Hazards*. Analyze the severity of environmental degradation. To determine the potential effect an operation may have on the environment, use the environmental risk assessment matrixes in training circular (TC) 3-34.489. The risk effect value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Using the environmental assessment matrixes, quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as: extremely high, medium, or low.

c. *Make Environmental Risk Decisions*. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high-environmental risks.

d. *Brief Chain of Command*. Brief the chain of command (including installation environmental office, if applicable) about proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. *Implement Controls*. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, TSOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. *Supervise*. Supervise and enforce the environmental protection standards.

Note: The battalion staff may produce an environmental protection-level matrix similar to the example in Table 1-1. This matrix ties directly into risk assessment.

Table 1-1. Example of an environmental-protection matrix.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION LEVELS			
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
1. *Waste Management*			
o Human waste	Unit TSOP	Slit trench	Burnout latrine	Sanitary sewer
o Solid waste		Unit incineration or burial	Incineration	Landfill
o Medical waste		Field collection, consolidation of disposal	US or host nation (HN) approved disposal methods	Same
o Hazardous waste		Field collection, consolidation of disposal	Unit collection point, classification, labels, Defense Logistics Agency (DLA) contract	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) or HN procedures
2. *Hazardous Materials*			
o Water	Unit TSOP	Spill response, report of any water contamination	HM tracking, spill response, report of spills over 50 gallons	Spill prevention plans, response teams
x5040 3. *Natural Resources*			
o Water	Unit TSOP	Unit TSOP	Erosion control	No degradation of water due to erosion or effluence
o Vegetation		Restriction on camouflage	Clearing in excess of 100 acres-- requires approval of joint task force	Clearing--requires environmental assessment
o Air		Dust suppression, non-hazardous means only	Control of open fires, fugitive dust	Controls on incineration and traffic
o Wildlife		Unit TSOP	Notation and avoidance of specific habitats	Taking of species prohibited
4. *Cultural and Historical Resources*			
	Unit TSOP	Minimize damage if possible	Operations in area-- require approval of division	Operations in area--require approval of joint task force

1-11. <u>Evaluation.</u> Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are formal and are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the unit. Chapter 6 describes how to set up an external evaluation.

    a. *Use of Training and Evaluation Outlines*. In addition to their role as training guides, the T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the criteria for evaluating the unit. The task standard statement in each describes to what extent the unit must complete the performance measures in order to earn a GO rating for the task.

    b. *Simultaneous Training and Evaluation*. The core of the MTP concept is simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides evaluation feedback and at the same time, every evaluation is a training session. For the program to work effectively, trainers must always evaluate training as it is being executed. Units must evaluate each task *every time it is performed*. Too often they fail to do this. *Leaders must insist on direct, on-the-spot evaluations*. Correcting poor performance is easy when it occurs during the individual or small group training. Unfortunately, use of outside evaluators prohibits the use of this extremely effective training tool during higher-level exercises. Leaders can compensate for this by scheduling frequent AARs at logical intervals throughout the exercises. This allows the platoon leader to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind.

    c. *Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Evaluations.* Training plans should include evaluating each task and exercise under NBC conditions. Leaders should consider repeating (at least once) each training event in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear.

CHAPTER 2
Training Matrixes

2-1. <u>General</u>. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

2-2. <u>Mission-to-Collective-Tasks Matrix</u>. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate Battlefield Operating System (BOS) which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table
<u>Mission Title</u>
• Defense **(DEFENSE)** • Offense **(OFFENSE)** • Reconnaissance and Security **(RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY)** • Retrograde **(RETROGRADE)** • Stability **(STABILITY)** • Support **(SUPPORT)**

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		X
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
Protect the Force					
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X			X
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUPPORT
Develop Intelligence			
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver			
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X
Employ Firepower			
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUPPORT
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	X	
Protect the Force			
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment			
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	
Exercise Command and Control			
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)	X	
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

2-3. Supporting-References-to-Collective-Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-3), identifies references that provide additional information on each of the Collective Tasks.

Collective Tasks		ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)	**X**			
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	**X**			
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	**X**			
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)	**X**			
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	**X**			
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	X			
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		**X**	**X**	
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 2188-R	DA FORM 2399-R	DA FORM 2404	DD FORM 2745
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	**X**	**X**		

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 2188-R	DA FORM 2399-R	DA FORM 2404	DD FORM 2745
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 2188-R	DA FORM 2399-R	DA FORM 2404	DD FORM 2745
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 2188-R	DA FORM 2399-R	DA FORM 2404	DD FORM 2745
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X	X		

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5988-E	DD FORM 1380	DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R	FM 100-10
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5988-E	DD FORM 1380	DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R	FM 100-10
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5988-E	DD FORM 1380	DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R	FM 100-10
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		**X**		
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5988-E	DD FORM 1380	DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R	FM 100-10
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**			
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-55	FM 100-6
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-55	FM 100-6
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-55	FM 100-6
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**			
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-55	FM 100-6
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 10-14-1	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			**X**	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 10-14-1	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 10-14-1	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X			
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 10-14-1	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-113	FM 17-98	FM 19-40	FM 20-3
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**			
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-113	FM 17-98	FM 19-40	FM 20-3
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**

Collective Tasks		FM 1-113	FM 17-98	FM 19-40	FM 20-3
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		**X**	**X**	
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		**X**	**X**	
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-113	FM 17-98	FM 19-40	FM 20-3
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-32	FM 21-18	FM 21-60	FM 23-91
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				X

Collective Tasks		FM 20-32	FM 21-18	FM 21-60	FM 23-91
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**			
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-32	FM 21-18	FM 21-60	FM 23-91
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-32	FM 21-18	FM 21-60	FM 23-91
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				**X**
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-1	FM 24-12	FM 24-18	FM 24-19
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-1	FM 24-12	FM 24-18	FM 24-19
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-1	FM 24-12	FM 24-18	FM 24-19
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

Collective Tasks		FM 24-1	FM 24-12	FM 24-18	FM 24-19
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-33	FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 25-5
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-33	FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 25-5
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-33	FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 25-5
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-33	FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 25-5
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-100	FM 3-3	FM 3-4	FM 34-2-1
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-100	FM 3-3	FM 3-4	FM 34-2-1
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**		**X**	
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-100	FM 3-3	FM 3-4	FM 34-2-1
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	X
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X		
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-100	FM 3-3	FM 3-4	FM 34-2-1
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-40-7	FM 3-5	FM 3-7	FM 4-25.11
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**			
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-40-7	FM 3-5	FM 3-7	FM 4-25.11
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-40-7	FM 3-5	FM 3-7	FM 4-25.11
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-40-7	FM 3-5	FM 3-7	FM 4-25.11
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 44-80	FM 5-20	FM 55-10	FM 55-15
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 44-80	FM 5-20	FM 55-10	FM 55-15
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X		
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 44-80	FM 5-20	FM 55-10	FM 55-15
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 44-80	FM 5-20	FM 55-10	FM 55-15
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-30	FM 55-9	FM 6-20	FM 7-10
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X			
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-30	FM 55-9	FM 6-20	FM 7-10
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)			**X**	
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-30	FM 55-9	FM 6-20	FM 7-10
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-30	FM 55-9	FM 6-20	FM 7-10
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-4 (3-21.94)	FM 7-5 (3-21.9)
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-4 (3-21.94)	FM 7-5 (3-21.9)
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-4 (3-21.94)	FM 7-5 (3-21.9)
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-4 (3-21.94)	FM 7-5 (3-21.9)
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	X
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 7-7	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-85
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)	X	X	X	
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

	Collective Tasks	FM 7-7	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-85
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	

Collective Tasks		FM 7-7	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-85
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X		
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	X
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 7-7	FM 7-7J	FM 7-8	FM 7-85
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-92	FM 8-10-6
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-92	FM 8-10-6
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	X			
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X	X	X	

Collective Tasks		FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-92	FM 8-10-6
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		X	X	
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)			X	
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				X
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-92	FM 8-10-6
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)	X			
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X		X	
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 90-2	FM 90-4	GTA 07-01-017	STP 21-24-SMCT
Develop Intelligence					
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)		**X**		
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Employ Firepower					
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-2	FM 90-4	GTA 07-01-017	STP 21-24-SMCT
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)			X	
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)				
Protect the Force					
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 90-2	FM 90-4	GTA 07-01-017	STP 21-24-SMCT
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				**X**
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-2	FM 90-4	GTA 07-01-017	STP 21-24-SMCT
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)				
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)				

Collective Tasks		TASC-303-TAD110
Develop Intelligence		
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver		
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1099	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1135	Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1297	Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-1306	Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-1369	Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
Employ Firepower		
07-3-3000	Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	

Collective Tasks		TASC-303-TAD110
07-3-3018	Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3027	Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3036	Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3045	Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3054	Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3063	Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3072	Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3081	Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3090	Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3099	Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)	**X**
07-3-3108	Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3117	Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3126	Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-3135	Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)	
Protect the Force		
07-3-1315	Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6009	Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6018	Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	

Collective Tasks		TASC-303-TAD110
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
Perform CSS and Sustainment		
07-3-4000	Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
Exercise Command and Control		
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-5018	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	

Collective Tasks		TASC-303-TAD110
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-5072	Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)	
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	

Figure 2-3. Collective Task to Supporting References

2-4. Individual-Task-to-Collective-Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-4), identifies the relationship that exists between the Collective Tasks in this publication and the Individual Tasks that support them.

Individual Tasks		07-3-1081	07-3-1099	07-3-1135	07-3-1171
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2					
052-193-1003	Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4					
052-192-3032	Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2					
052-193-1003	Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012	Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1					
031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2					
441-091-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3					
113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-1297	07-3-1306	07-3-1315	07-3-1351
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically			**X**	
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield			**X**	
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically	**X**			
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				**X**
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT	**X**			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-1369	07-3-1378	07-3-1387	07-3-1432
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-2027	07-3-2045	07-3-2054	07-3-3000
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-3018	07-3-3027	07-3-3036	07-3-3045
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad	**X**			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-3054	07-3-3063	07-3-3072	07-3-3081
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-3090	07-3-3099	07-3-3108	07-3-3117
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-3126	07-3-3135	07-3-4000	07-3-4009
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-4018	07-3-4027	07-3-4045	07-3-5000
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-5018	07-3-5027	07-3-5036	07-3-5054
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-5072	07-3-5081	07-3-5090	07-3-6000
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE			**X**	

Individual Tasks	07-3-6009	07-3-6018	07-3-6027	07-3-6036
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4				
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield				
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2				
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically				
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad				
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1				
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD				**X**
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2				
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT	**X**			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3				
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE				

Individual Tasks	07-3-6045	07-3-6054	07-3-6063
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 2			
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically			
Enlisted, MOS 11B / Skill Level 4			
052-192-3032 Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield			
Enlisted, MOS 11C / Skill Level 2			
052-193-1003 Prime Explosives Nonelectrically			
071-074-0012 Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 1			
031-503-1012 PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 2			
441-091-1040 VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT			
Enlisted, MOS Common / Skill Level 3			
113-572-4008 TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE			

Figure 2-4. Individual Task to Collective Task

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines

3-1. General. A mission outline shows the relationship between a critical wartime mission and the mission-essential and supporting tasks that comprise it. This chapter provides example outlines for five critical wartime missions: offense, defense, reconnaissance and security, retrograde, and stability. Each mission outline includes example exercises and lists the collective tasks that comprise them. The trainer should use these examples to customize mission outlines for his unit's particular wartime missions.

3-2. Relationship of Mission Outlines to Training Matrixes. The matrixes in Chapter 2 provide the critical collective tasks for platoon missions. Leaders can combine these tasks in various ways to form many different STXs and training plans. This allows the unit the ability to receive well-rounded training.

3-3. Mission Outline Preparation. Leaders start with a standard format to build their mission outlines. They list supporting tasks in the order they will be conducted throughout the planning, preparation, and execution of a mission. From this list, leaders can then construct appropriate training exercises. They prepare the mission outline as shown in Table 3-1.

Table 3-1. Mission outline development steps.

Step	Action
1	Select a critical mission to outline.
2	Review the format for mission outlines.
3	Verify the following information for the heading-- • Unit's name. • Critical mission. • Title and number of supported exercise (if any).
4	Write the heading, for example-- INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE ATTACK FTX Conduct an Attack 7-1-E0001
5	Line the STX titles so they can serve as column headings, for example-- STX Occupy Assembly Area 7-1-E0001
6	For each STX, list the collective tasks and drills.
7	Verify that the list for each STX agrees with paragraph 8 of the OPORD that applies.

3-4. Mission Outline Examples. The example mission outlines that follow, show the relationships between a battalion level FTX and the supporting company STXs. They also show the relationships between the company STXs and their supporting T&EOs and drills.

INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE ATTACK FTX Deliberate Attack 7-2-E0001	
STX Occupy an Assembly Area 7-3-E0001	STX Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit 7-3-E0002
Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures 07-3-5036
Prepare for Combat 07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat 07-3-5081
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit 07-3-1099
React to Contact Battle Drill 2	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009	React to Ambush Battle Drill 4
	Break Contact Battle Drill 3

Figure 3-1. Example of an attack mission outline.

INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE ATTACK FTX Deliberate Attack 7-2-E0001	
STX Assault an Objective 7-3-E0003	STX Conduct a Raid 7-3-E0004
Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas 07-3-1189
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit 07-3-1099	React to Contact Battle Drill 2
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009
Conduct Initial Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle Battle Drill 8	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 288007-3-1270
Conduct Overwatch or Support by Fire 07-3-1252	Conduct a Raid 07-3-1126
Assault an Objective 07-3-1009	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009	

Figure 3-1. Example of an attack mission outline (continued).

INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE DEFEND FTX Conduct a Defense 7-2-E0002	
STX Conduct a Defense 7-3-E0005	STX Defend a Building 7-3-E0006
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270	Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063
React to Contact Battle Drill 2	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009	Conduct a Strongpoint Defense of a Building 07-3-1162
Conduct a Defense 07-3-1054	Conduct a Disengagement 07-3-1072
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit 07-3-1108
Conduct a Disengagement 07-3-1072	
Conduct Overwatch and Support by Fire 07-3-1252	

Figure 3-2. Example of a defend mission outline.

INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY FTX Conduct Reconnaissance and Security Operations 7-2-E0003	
STX Conduct a Screen 7-3-E0007	STX Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance 7-3-E0008

Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures 07-3-5036
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit 07-3-1099	Prepare for Combat 07-3-5081
Conduct a Screen 07-3-1144	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit 07-3-1099
	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270
	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance 07-3-2009
	Establish an Observation Post (OP) 07-3-2018

Figure 3-3. Example of a reconnaissance and security mission outline.

INFANTRY PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE RETROGRADE FTX Conduct Retrograde Operations 7-2-E0004	
STX Conduct a Disengagement 7-3-E0009	STX Conduct a Disengagement 7-3-E0010
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures 07-3-5036	Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063
Prepare for Combat 07-3-5081	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) tx432007-3-1270
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270	React to Contact Battle Drill 2
Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft 07-3-6000	React to a Chemical Attack 07-3-6054
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009	Conduct a Linkup 07-3-1081

Conduct Overwatch and Support by Fire 07-3-1252	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009
Conduct a Disengagement 07-3-1072	Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration 07-3-1216

Figure 3-4. Example of a retrograde mission outline.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">INFANTRY PLATOON
MISSION OUTLINE
STABILITY OPERATIONS

FTX
Conduct Stability Operations

7-2-E0005</td></tr>
<tr><td align="center">STX

Establish a Checkpoint

7-3-E0011</td><td align="center">STX

Control a Presence Patrol

7-3-E0012</td></tr>
<tr><td>Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures 07-3-5036</td><td>Occupy an Assembly Area 07-3-5063</td></tr>
<tr><td>Prepare for Combat 07-3-5081</td><td>Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270</td></tr>
<tr><td>Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) 07-3-1270</td><td>React to Contact Battle Drill 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Occupy Title 07-3-</td><td>Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009</td></tr>
<tr><td>Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization 07-3-5009</td><td>Conduct a Presence Patrol 07-3-1117</td></tr>
<tr><td>Establish a Checkpoint 07-3-1324</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Figure 3-5. Example of a stability mission outline.

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. <u>General</u>. This chapter provides example formats and guidance to leaders and trainers to use in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating platoon situational training exercises (STXs). These are conducted to practice collective tasks before a company or battalion field training exercise (FTX). While developing training events, the leader should also review the combined arms training strategy (CATS) for his unit as well as FMs 7-1, 25-4, and 25-series TCs, which supplement this chapter. The CATS provides additional detailed information on audience and on time and support requirements. This chapter also includes an example training support package (TSP). Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the task standards in Chapter 5. Table 4-1 shows how training exercises are numbered (TRADOC Regulation 350-70).

Note: Safety is a major factor when it comes to training. Soldiers must constantly be on the alert for and avoid situations that may result in injury or death. For example, they should—

- Lock cargo hatches.
- Avoid grabbing the hot barrel of a machine gun.
- Know their own location and their buddies' locations during live-fire exercises.
- Confirm, double-check, and reconfirm all mortar firing data.

    a.   Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This mission training plan (MTP) describes how to develop two types of exercises: FTXs and STXs. Examples of a battalion FTX and platoon STXs are included to assist the leader in developing training exercises for the platoon.

    (1)   Training exercises are numbered in accordance with (IAW) US Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Regulation 350-70. The following FTX and STX exercises are examples only. Table 4-1 is an example of how to number training exercises.

Table 4-1. Exercises.

Exercise Number	Title
FTX 7-1-E0001	Conduct Combat Operations
STX 7-3-E0001	Attack
STX 7-3-E0002	Defend

4-2. <u>Field Training Exercise.</u> An FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. The FTX supports training at battalion, company, and platoon levels. The FTXs integrate the total force in a realistic combat environment. An FTX involves combat arms, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units. It includes such training as battle drills and crew drills.   The STX is used to reinforce Soldier and collective training integration. Both the FTX and STX are used to train the leaders, subordinate elements, and slice elements to—

- Move and maneuver units realistically.
- Employ organic weapons systems effectively.
- Build teamwork and cohesion.
- Plan and coordinate supporting fires.
- Plan and coordinate logistical activities to support tactical operations.

4-3. <u>Situational Training Exercise.</u> STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises that train a single collective task (T&EO) or a group of related battle drills and collective tasks (T&EOs). They provide the leader with a method to train using doctrinally approved tactics and techniques. Unlike a battle drill, an STX does not establish the method of execution. The STXs may be modified based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). They provide standardization without stereotyping training. Although mission-oriented (based on higher headquarters [HQ] operation order [OPORD]), an STX does not train all tasks required for an operation. The STXs require leader tasks (such as planning, controlling, and reporting) which tie the supporting collective tasks together. Each STX focuses on a specific mission (IAW higher HQ OPORD), but the STX does not stand alone (under all conditions) as the only STX required for operation proficiency. To accomplish proficiency, several STXs within the same operation can be trained. This process is continuous and must be repeated for each operation.

4-4. <u>Plan the Exercises.</u> See FM 25-4 on how to conduct training exercises.

    a.   *Conduct Analysis*.

        (1)   Determine the need for training exercises and identify the types to be used. The need for an exercise is based upon the following:

            (a) Higher HQ analysis of subordinate unit proficiency.

            (b) Higher HQ issuance of the missions, goals, objectives, and guidance.

            (c) Commanders' evaluations of unit and Soldier proficiency.

            (d) Mission-essential task list (METL). (Company is the lowest level to prepare a METL.)

        (2)   Consider the principles of training established in FM 7-1 (25-101).

        (3)   Establish the training requirements and the priorities for unit training programs.

        (4)   Determine the training objectives. These are based on the leader, individual, and collective (unit) skills and tasks that need initial or sustainment training.

            (a) Exercise objectives should be specific, relevant, realistically obtainable, measurable, and supportive of exercise goals.

            (b) Exercise objectives should be organized into functional areas to highlight activities that need improvement.

            (c) Properly stated objectives provide evaluators with a solid basis for conducting their evaluation and after-action reviews (AARs).

Note: When the exercise objectives are established, select the type of exercise to be conducted.

    b.   *Select the Type of Exercise*.

        (1)   Determine the type of exercises to be conducted by comparing the objectives with the kind of training that each exercise provides.

        (2) Identify the proper exercise, within resource constraints, that can best meet the objectives.

    c.   *Considerations*.

        (1)   **Flexibility.**

(a) Plan for alternate types of exercises in case weather or other constraints prohibit the originally scheduled exercise.

(b) Exercises should allow subordinate commanders the freedom to innovate within the framework of doctrine, tactics, techniques, and operating procedures.

(c) Exercises should not follow rigid timetables that inhibit training and learning. Instead, they should establish schedules that provide sufficient time to correct mistakes and ensure learning and AARs at all levels.

(2) **Resources.**

(a) *Facilities and Land*. Planners must consider the environment for the exercise and the effects of the weather. If inadequate land or facilities seriously hinder training, planners may have to alter the exercises.

(b) *Support*. Planners must ensure that the exercises can be conducted within the resource levels and that the training received justifies the resources expended. Communications and transportation for participants and evaluators must be adequate. Units should use only the transportation, communications, and equipment authorized by their table of organization and equipment (TOE) or modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE).

(c) *Time*. For each exercise, subordinate elements must be allocated time to conduct troop-leading procedures as well as to develop tactical situations that lead to logical and sound tactical employment of player units. Time must be allocated for conducting complete logistical support of tactical operations and for conducting a thorough AAR.

(d) *Participants*. Planners must consider whether or not units or groups of individuals to be trained are adequate in size or strength to benefit from the type of exercise selected.

(e) *Pre-exercise plans*. Planning begins immediately after the decision has been made to conduct an exercise. The planning steps listed below are used to prepare for an exercise. Specific exercises may omit some steps. These steps are generally sequential. However, some may be performed simultaneously.

    1) Prepare an exercise directive that—

- Specifies what type of exercise is to be conducted and states its specific training objectives.

- Indicates the time frame for the exercise, its physical location, and the duration of its execution phase. The location, time, and duration must be consistent with the type of exercise selected and the training objectives.

- Identifies the type and quantity of special equipment required.

- Provides additional information such as environmental constraints.

    2) Assign responsibilities for planning.

    3) Conduct research.

    4) Prepare a supporting plan schedule.

    5) Prepare an outline plan.

6) Conduct a reconnaissance.

7) Complete the exercise support plans.

8) Prepare the scenario.

9) Prepare and issue the operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.

10) Publish the memorandum of instruction.

11) Prepare the terrain.

12) Conduct a rehearsal.

    d. *Develop the Exercise*.

Note: Formats for the FTX and STX are addressed in this chapter. However, platoons normally conduct STXs to prepare for company STXs or battalion FTXs.

   (1) **Exercise format**. Formats for FTXs and STXs are generally the same.

Note: Table 4-2 lists the components of the FTX format and their purposes in the order they would appear.

Table 4-2. Field training exercise format.

Heading	Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number.
Objective	Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train.
Interface	Provide a list of the next higher echelon FTXs and the supporting elements or units STXs.
Training Enhancers	Provide specific information for using the FTX for training and provide a sample scenario for training.
General Situation	Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment.
Special Situation	Provide specific information from higher headquarters or the unit's commander.
Support Requirements	Provide a listing of the items that are required to conduct the exercise. If it is a battalion or higher echelon MTP, the support requirements would include the following statement: "the support requirements are the consolidated requirements of the battalion headquarters and all its subordinate units".
T&EO Sequence	Provide a listing of T&EO task titles and page numbers in the chronological sequence in which they are executed during the course of the exercise.

Note: Table 4-3 lists the components of the STX format and their purposes in the order they would appear.

Table 4-3. Situational training exercise format.

Heading	Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number.
Objective	Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train.
Interface	Provide a list of titles and identify the applicable supporting STXs (company for battalion MTP and platoon for company MTP) and supporting subordinate unit's drills (platoon for company MTP and squad for platoon MTP). Include consistently attached, supported, and supporting unit's STXs, if available, which may be trained in conjunction with this STX.
Training	Provide leader training information and training tips. Provide specific information for using the STX for training and provide a sample scenario for training.
General Situation	Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment.
Special Situation	Provide sample fragmentary order (FRAGO) from unit commander. Provide specific information not given in the FRAGO but required for the exercise from higher headquarters.
Support Requirements	Provide a list of those items that are required to conduct the exercise.
T&EO Sequence	Provide a list of T&EO task titles and page numbers in the chronological sequence in which they are executed during the course of the exercise.

(2) The following FTX and STX exercises are examples only.

INFANTRY BATTALION FTX

7-1-E0001

Conduct Combat Operations

1. **Objective.** Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this FTX is to train and or evaluate the Infantry company in the conduct of combat operations. This FTX trains and or evaluates the company commander and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing combat operations. This FTX is designed as a free-play, force-on-force exercise that provides a flexible training vehicle for training critical METL tasks. FTX and STX numbers and titles are examples only.

Note: The specific sequence of events will vary with the actions of the opposing force (OPFOR) and battalion commander's training objectives. The company commander will modify the sequence of events through his selection of primary and supporting events to meet his specific training objectives.

2. **Interface.**

   a. This FTX supports the higher headquarters FTX 07-1-E0001, Conduct Combat Operations.

   b. This FTX is supported by (STX numbers and titles are examples only):

      (1) STX 07-3-E0001, Conduct an Attack.

      (2) STX 07-3-E0002, Conduct a Defense.

      (3) STX 07-3-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.

      (4) STX 07-3-E0007, Conduct a Movement to Contact.

      (5) STX 07-3-E0008, Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment.

      (6) STX 07-3-E0017, Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire.

3. **Training Enhancers.** In preparing the company to conduct an FTX, the commander and subordinate leaders must first assess Soldier, leader, and unit proficiency in accomplishing METL tasks. This assessment will provide the basis to identify areas on which to concentrate future training. Since this is a high-cost exercise, extensive planning and preparation are required to ensure the exercise training objectives are met. Use the same personnel for OPFOR controllers and OPFOR in both the practice exercises and for the actual FTX. The commander and subordinate leaders can develop and conduct the needed training to attain proficiency in designated areas before the FTX.

   a. General Tips for Training.

      (1) Throughout the exercise, conduct AARs that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.

      (2) Include normal attachments and direct support (DS) elements (field artillery, engineers).

      (3) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.

      (4) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.

      (5) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).

      (6) Integrate nuclear, biological and chemical (NBC), and electronic warfare.

(7) Ensure that personnel are familiar with the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) that relate to the exercise.

(8) Review Soldier familiarity with the training environment.

b. Pre-exercise activities as follows:

(1) Map exercises (MAPEXs) combined with sand table exercises that match the terrain to be used during the FTX.

(2) Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT) and or terrain walk.

(3) Communications exercise.

(4) Applicable STX (company or platoon).

c. Exercise instructions.

(1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.

(2) The tasks that support this FTX must be executed to standard.

(3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.

(4) Multiple-integrated laser engagement system (MILES) should be used when feasible.

(5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.

(6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.

(7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated.

(8) Start the exercise when the evaluated unit receives the warning order (WARNO). End the exercise after the evaluated unit has conducted consolidation and reorganization.

 (9) Conduct this exercise under all environmental conditions: during periods of daylight and limited visibility, under the threat of NBC attacks, air and ground force attacks, indirect fire attacks, and electronic warfare (EW) attacks.

d. Scenario. Your battalion (1-25 IN [M]) is conducting combat operations in the Beta Republic as part of a larger force of the 1st Brigade. The Beta republic has a well-trained combat force that consists of ground forces. The enemy possesses biological and chemical weapons and may have nuclear capability. Hostilities have been ongoing for six months. For the most part, the civilian population is in favor of military actions by the US and its allies.

e.   Table 4-4 is an example that lists the sequence, event, and associated time for the exercise.

Table 4-4. Example sequence, events, and associated time.

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Administrative Preparations	Pre FTX
2	Receive Warning Order	1 hr
3	Plan Operations	4 hr
4	Prepare OPLAN	1 hr
5	Develop Road Movement Order	40 min
6	Develop Occupation, Internal Support, and Defense Plans	1hr 15 min
7	Intermediate AAR	1 hr
8	Conduct Tactical Movement	2 hrs
9	Conduct a Movement to Contact	6 hrs
10	Intermediate AAR	1 hr
11	Conduct an Attack	6 hrs
12	Conduct Consolidation	30 min
13	Conduct Reorganization	1 hr
14	Intermediate AAR	1 hr
15	Conduct a Defense	24 hrs
16	Final AAR	3 hrs

Total Time: <u>53 hrs 25 min</u>

NOTES:
1. Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) conditions.
2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event varies based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the unit personnel.

4.   **General Situation.**

a.   1st Brigade continues to conduct combat operations against organized terrorist forces loyal to insurgent leader Bashayev in the Beta Republic. At D+ 17, 1st Brigade began its attack with two battalions abreast to seize the aerial port of debarkation (APOD) located within the vicinity of Olympia Village in the Beta Republic.

5.   **Special Situation.** Your battalion (1-25 IN [M]) has received an OPORD that directs it to conduct combat operations to locate a bypassed enemy company and, on order, destroy it. The battalion is given a "be prepared" mission to defend.

a.   The company (CO) issues an OPORD. (See Appendix B.)

6.   **Support Requirements.** The support requirements for the FTX are the consolidated requirements for the battalion headquarters and all its subordinate elements. Support requirements include the following:

a.   One hundred percent of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.

b.   Required trainers or evaluators. When conducting a company-level internal training exercise, the commander, executive officer (XO), platoon leaders, and squad leaders are the trainers and or evaluators. However, additional personnel may be needed from the battalion. Each evaluator

should be supported by an evaluation plan that guides his actions during the exercise and supports the battalion commander's overall evaluation plan. Evaluators must position themselves so they can monitor all unit activities, actions, and communications.

c.   Vehicles and communications support for evaluators and OPFOR.

d.   Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications and medical personnel support.

e.   Classes of supply I through V, VIII, and IX in sufficient quantities to support the FTX (friendly, evaluator, and OPFOR).

f.   Opposing force. Company-size forces should oppose maneuver battalions. Platoon-sized forces should oppose maneuver companies. A reinforced squad can support special events such as ambushes. The OPFOR should be equipped with vehicles that realistically simulate enemy mobility capabilities. Ideally, the OPFOR will be equipped with modification kits that suggest the appearance and silhouette of enemy combat equipment.

g.   Maneuver area. 20 A training area large enough to support battalion maneuver is required.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-5 is an example list of T&EOs.

Table 4-5. Example of training and evaluation outlines.

Task	Task Number
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures	07-3-5036
Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit	07-3-1099
Conduct Tactical Movement	07-3-1270
Conduct a Movement to Contact	07-3-1090
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance	07-3-2009
Conduct an Attack	07-3-1009
Employ Protective Obstacles	07-3-1315
Conduct a Defense	07-3-1054
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	07-3-5009

Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY PLATOON STX

Conduct an Attack

7-3-E0001

1. **Objective.** Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this STX is to train and or evaluate the Infantry platoon in the conduct of an attack. It trains and or evaluates the unit's ability to plan, prepare, execute, and assess operations. STX numbers and titles are examples only.

2. **Interface.**

   a. This STX supports the higher HQ FTX 07-1-E0001, Conduct Combat Operations.

   b. This STX is supported by:

   (1) STX 07-3-E0001, Conduct an Attack.

   (2) STX 07-3-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.

   (3) STX 07-3-E0003, Employ Fire Support.

   (4) STX 07-3-E0017, Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire.

3. **Training.**

   a. General Tips for Training.

   (1) Throughout the exercise, conduct AARs that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.

   (2) Include normal attachments and DS elements (field artillery, engineers).

   (3) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.

   (4) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.

   (5) Use trained personnel to act as EPW.

   (6) Integrate NBC and EW.

   (7) Ensure that platoon personnel are familiar with the platoon's TSOPs that relate to the exercise.

   (8) Review Soldier familiarity with the training environment.

   b. Pre-exercise activities include MAPEXs combined with sand table exercises that match the terrain to be used during the STX.

   c. Exercise instructions.

   (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.

   (2) The tasks that support this STX must be executed to standard.

(3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.

(4) The MILES should be used when feasible.

(5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.

(6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.

(7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated.

(8) Start the exercise when the evaluated unit receives the WARNO. End the exercise when the evaluated unit has conducted consolidation and reorganization.

(9) Conduct this exercise under all environmental conditions: during periods of daylight and limited visibility and under the threat of NBC attacks, air and ground force attacks, indirect fire attacks, and EW attacks.

d.   Scenario. The Infantry platoon is conducting operations as part of B/1-25 IN, in the Alpha Republic. Forces loyal to insurgent leader Bashayev who are occupying positions in critical areas in the Alpha Republic oppose the platoon. These forces are supporting terrorist activity throughout the highland mountain area and have recently been linked to an unidentified international terrorist group.

4.   **General Situation.**

a.   The platoon is occupying an assembly area as part of the company. The company is preparing to perform an attack against an enemy threat with at least 25 enemy personnel. The company commander has given your platoon the mission to seize buildings (BLDGs) on OBJ RED in the vicinity of _____, and return control of the southwestern portion to host nation authorities and restore order to the local area. Coordinates for the objective area and the start time for the operation are provided in the OPORD. (See Appendix B.) Enemy contact is likely.

5.   **Special Situation.**

a.   The company is preparing to attack the objective. Your platoon receives a FRAGO for the attack (Figure 4-1, example only).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 01

References. OPORD 01.

Map Series. No change to OPORD.

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

1. **SITUATION.**

Enemy forces. B/1-25 IN (M) is opposed by an enemy threat of approximately 25 terrorists loyal to insurgent leader Bashayev.

Friendly forces. No change to OPORD.

2. **MISSION.** B/1-25 IN (M) attacks to seize Objective (name) (grid) not later than (NLT) (date-time group) to restore order to the local area and return control of the southeastern portion of OBJ ___ to host nation authorities.

3. **EXECUTION.**

Intent. We must rapidly seize OBJ ___ for the brigade (BDE) to maintain the momentum of its attack while allowing the BDE freedom of movement in the Eastern portion of the BDE zone. We will conduct the mission using two platoons abreast and one platoon providing support. The end-state will be the penetration of OBJ ___ and facilitation of the forward passage of lines of 2-67 IN (M) with the CO postured to continue the support of the BN main effort to the East. I will accept risk in that 1/B/1-25 IN (M) to penetrate OBJ ___ and control buildings 2 and 3.

    a.   Concept of operation.

       (1) Maneuver. B/1-25 IN (M) conducts an attack NLT _____ to secure OBJs (name) and (name) in order to defeat elements of an enemy terrorist force. C/1-25 (M) is designated as the breaching force to secure OBJ (name). 2/B/1-25 and 3/B/1-25 IN, as the assault force, will conduct the main attack along Axis (name) and Axis (name) to secure OBJ (name). 1/B/1-25 as the support force will infiltrate along Axis (name) to support by fire (SBF) position (name).

       (2) Fires. No indirect fires prior to (date, time) without BN approval. Priority of fires is initially to 1/B/1-25 IN shift to 2/B/1-25 and 3/B/1-25 IN, on order.

       (3) Counter-air operations. No change to OPORD.

       (4) Intelligence. No change to OPORD.

       (5) Electronic warfare. No change to OPORD.

       (6) Engineer. Priority is to 1/B /1-25 IN then to assault force.

    b.   Tasks to maneuver units.

       (1) 1/B /1-25 IN.

          (a) Move to and occupy SBF (name) NLT _____. Be prepared to provide supporting fires on OBJ (name). Shift fires on order.

          (b) Report occupation of SBF (name).

Figure 4-1. Example of a fragmentary order.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 01 (**continued**)

      (2) 2/B/1-25 IN.

        (a) Coordinate with B/1-25 IN for location and passage of breaching lanes along phase line (PL) (name).

        (b) Occupy assault position (name) NLT_____. If undetected, begin attack on order.

        (c) Report occupation of assault position.

      (3) 3/B/1-25 IN.

        (a) Occupy assault position (name) NLT _____. If undetected, begin attack on order.

        (b) Report occupation of assault position.

4.   **SERVICE SUPPORT.** No change to OPORD.

5.   **COMMAND AND SIGNAL.**

    a. Command. CO main command post (CP) located vicinity (VIC)_____, on order moves to _____.

    b. Signal. Signal operating instructions (SOI) index Alpha in effect.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

                        _____
                           Commander

Figure 4-1. Example of fragmentary order (continued).

6. **Support Requirements.** The support requirements for the STX are the consolidated requirements for the platoon plus attachments. Table 4-6 is an example list of support requirements.

Table 4-6. Example list of support requirements.

EXAMPLE	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100 percent of TOE ERC A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system.	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240B machine gun system.	1 per M240B (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns.	3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture.	3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (Platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel.)	
a. Class I.	
(1) MRE.	3 each meals per Soldier per day
(2) Potable water.	1 each 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required.)	

EXAMPLE	
c. Class V:	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each M249
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) 7.62 mm (DODIC) A111	600 rds for each M240B
(4) 40 mm dummy (DODIC) B375	1 each per MK 19
(5) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per TSOP for each M203
(6) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 each per rifleman
(7) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 each per rifleman
(8) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 per platoon
(9) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 per platoon
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence that they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-7 is a list of T&EOs to be trained and or evaluated during the STX.

Table 4-7. Training and evaluation outlines.

Task	Task Number
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures	07-3-5036
Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit	07-3-1099
10Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted)	07-3-1270
Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance	07-3-2009
Conduct a Deliberate Attack	07-3-1009
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	07-3-2009

Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY PLATOON STX

Conduct a Defense

7-3-E0002

1. **Objective.** Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this STX is to train and or evaluate the company in the conduct of a defense. It trains and or evaluates the unit's ability to plan, prepare, execute, and assess operations. STX numbers and titles are examples only.

2. **Interface.**

    a. This STX supports the higher headquarters FTX 07-1-E0001, Conduct Combat Operations.

    b. This STX is supported by:

        (1) STX 07-3-E0002, Conduct a Defense

        (2) STX 07-3-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.

        (3) STX 07-3-E0013, Employ Fire Support.

        (4) STX 07-3-E0017, Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire.

3. **Training.**

    a. General Tips for Training.

        (1) Throughout the exercise, conduct AARs that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.

        (2) Include normal attachments and DS elements (field artillery, engineers).

        (3) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.

        (4) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.

        (5) Use trained personnel to act as EPW.

        (6) Integrate NBC and EW.

        (7) Ensure that company personnel are familiar with the company's TSOP that relate to the exercise.

        (8) Review Soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. Pre-exercise activities include MAPEXs combined with sand table exercises that match the terrain to be used during the STX.

    c. Exercise instructions.

        (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.

        (2) The tasks that support this STX must be executed to standard.

(3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.

(4) MILES should be used when feasible.

(5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.

(6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.

(7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated.

(8) Start the exercise when the evaluated unit receives the WARNO. End the exercise when the evaluated unit has conducted consolidation and reorganization.

(9) Conduct this exercise under all environmental conditions: during periods of daylight and limited visibility, under the threat of NBC attacks, air and ground force attacks, indirect fire attacks, and EW attacks.

d. Scenario. Your company is conducting operations as part of the 1-25 IN BN in the Alpha Republic. Enemy forces from the Beta Republic have a well-trained combat force that consists of ground forces. The enemy possesses chemical weapons and may have nuclear capability. Hostilities have been ongoing for six months. For the most part, the civilian population in the Alpha Republic is in favor of military actions by the US and its allies.

4. **General Situation.**

1st Brigade has been successful in penetrating the defensive strong point of the Beta Republic battalion-sized force. 2-67 IN (M) and Team C, 1-79 IN (M) is now occupying battle position's (BP's) (name) and (name) and has transitioned to the defense. This is in anticipation of an enemy counterattack into the brigade sector by elements of a division-sized force equipped with armored personnel carriers (APCs), tanks, and pickup trucks. 1-25 IN (M) has successfully defeated the enemy reconnaissance company that was located along PL (name). 1-25 IN (M) is currently consolidating in the vicinity of PL (name) after their successful attack.

5. **Special Situation.**

Your company (B/1-25 IN) has consolidated after their attack in the vicinity of PL (name) and is preparing to defend. Your platoon receives a CO FRAGO (Figure 4-2, example only).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 02

References. OPORD 01.

Map Series. No change to OPORD.

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

1. **SITUATION.**

    a. Enemy forces. Elements of the Beta Republic battalion have been delayed by our division's (DIV's) effort. However, it appears that a brigade-sized element equipped with APCs and tanks will counterattack within 24 hours into the battalion area of operation (AO). Lead elements have been successful in penetrating a seam in the East between 2-67 IN (M) and the 54 IN DIV. This unit's most probable course of action is to continue to attack with at least two platoons attempting to cut 1-25 IN (M) lines of communication (LOCs) from East to West to support the counterattack.

    b. Friendly forces. 1-25 IN (M). Intent: The purpose of this operation is to defeat elements of the Beta Republic Brigade in our AO. We will accomplish this by conducting an area defense with two companies defending forward and one company defending the East portion of the company zone. I am assuming risk that the one company will be in the proper position to prevent the enemy from cutting through to the rear of our main battle area (MBA) and blocking LOCs. Our end-state will be the defeat of the IN company, the leading element of the enemy brigade, opposing our battalion (BN) with two companies abreast in battle positions oriented to the Northwest along PL (name) and one company defending in a battle position oriented East.

2. **MISSION.** A/1-25 IN (M) defends in sector from _____ to _____ NLT _____ to defeat the lead company of the Beta Republic Brigade. On order, moves to and occupies BP (name) as BDE reserve and prepares to conduct offensive operations.

3. **EXECUTION.**

    Intent: The purpose of this operation is to defeat elements of the Beta Republic Brigade located in the Northeast. We will accomplish this by establishing a cohesive defense and shaping a penetration in sector to draw elements of the enemy Infantry company into a kill zone. I'm assuming risk that the place in which we have established the defense will canalize the enemy preventing him from bypassing our CO and cutting BN LOCs. Our end-state will be the defeat of the Beta Republic company in our AO and occupation of BP (name) as the BN reserve.

Figure 4-2. Example of a fragmentary order.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 02 **(continued)**

(1) Maneuver. A/1-25 IN conducts a defense in sector to defeat elements of the Beta Republic brigade. 2/A/1-25 IN in the North occupies BP (name), 3/A/1-25 IN in the center, as the CO main effort, occupies BP (name), and 1/A/1-25 IN in the South occupies BP (name). Second platoon establishes a security zone in the vicinity of PL (name). Through the use of the security forces, platoons will shape a penetration in order to force elements of the Beta Republic Infantry company into engagement area (EA) (name) so that fires can be massed to defeat the enemy force.

(2) Fires. Priority of indirect fires is to 3/A/1-25 IN, 2/A/1-25 IN, then to 1/A/1-25 IN. On order, mortars will provide indirect fires to divert the enemy's attention to cause him to seek cover, preventing him from bringing direct fires on the company.

(3) Counter-air operations. Air defense priority is to protection of platoon in BP (name).

(4) Engineer. Priority to 3/A/1-25 IN followed by 2/A/1-25 IN. Priority of effort is countermobility, survivability, and then mobility.

b. Tasks to maneuver units.

(1) 1/A/1-25 IN.
    20
    (a) Coordinate interlocking fires between 2/A/1-25 IN.

    (b) Coordinate with C/1-25 IN on company boundaries.

(2) 2/A/1-25 IN.

    (a) Coordinate interlocking fires between 1/A/1-25 IN on the left.

    (b) Coordinate with SCT/1-25 IN for movement and fire control in our sector.

    (c) Locate along PL (name) in the vicinity of (grid) and provide company security.

(3) 3/A/1-25 IN.

    (a) Coordinate interlocking fires between 2/A/1-25 IN and 1/A/1-25 IN.

    (b) Coordinate with SCT/1-25 IN for movement and fire control in our sector.

Figure 4-2. Example of a fragmentary order (continued).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 02 **(continued)**

    c. Coordinating instructions.

        (1) This order is effective for planning immediately and execution on order.

        (2) Platoons will allow no penetration beyond 200 meters of PL (name).

        (3) No fires beyond 1st BDE 54 IN DIV boundary without the approval of this HQ.

        (4) MOPP. MOPP 2.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

    a. Command. CO main CP located in the vicinity of _____, on order moves to _____.

    b. Signal. SOI index Alpha in effect.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

                                   _____

                                     Commander

Figure 4-2. Example of a fragmentary order (continued).

6. **Support Requirements.** The support requirements for the STX are the consolidated requirements for the company plus attachments. Table 4-8 is an example of a support requirements list.

Table 4-8. Example list of support requirements.

EXAMPLE	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100 percent of TOE ERC A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system.	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240B machine gun system.	1 per M240B (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns.	3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture.	3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (Company, OPFOR, other support personnel.)	
a. Class I:	
(1) MRE.	3 each meals per Soldier per day
(2) Potable water.	1 each 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required.)	
c. Class V:	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each M249
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) Simulator, Launching TOE (DODIC) L592	1 each per TOW
(4) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per SOP for each M203
(5) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 each per rifleman
(6) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 each per rifleman
(7) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 per platoon
(8) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 per platoon
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-9 is an example list of T&EOs to be trained and or evaluated during the STX.

Table 4-9. Example list of training and evaluation outlines.

Task	Task Number
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures	07-3-5036
Prepare for Combat	07-3-5081
Conduct Operations During Limited Visibility	16007-3-1234
Employ Protective Obstacles	07-3-1315
Conduct a Defense	07-3-1054
Perform Resupply Operations	07-3-4018
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	07-3-5009

Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY PLATOON STX

7-3-E0008

Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment

1. **Objective.** Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this STX is to train and or evaluate the platoon in the conduct of stability operations. It trains and or evaluates the unit's ability to plan, prepare, execute, and assess operations. STX numbers and titles are examples only.

2. **Interface.**

    a. This STX supports the higher headquarters FTX 07-1-E0005, Conduct Stability Operations.

    b. This STX is supported by:

        (1) STX 07-3-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.

        (2) STX 07-3-E0010, Process Captured Documents and Equipment.

        (3) STX 07-3-E0015, Establish a Checkpoint.

        (4) STX 07-3-E0016, Conduct a Presence Patrol.

        (5) STX 07-3-E0022, Establish an Observation Post.

        (6) STX 07-3-E0023, React to a Civil Disturbance.

        (7) STX 07-3-E0025, Secure Civilians During Operations.

3. **Training.**

    a. General Tips for Training.

        (1) Throughout the exercise, conduct AARs that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.

        (2) Include normal attachments and DS elements (field artillery, engineers).

        (3) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.

        (4) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.

        (5) Use trained personnel to act as EPW.

        (6) Integrate NBC and EW.

        (7) Ensure that platoon personnel are familiar with the platoon's TSOP that relate to the exercise.

        (8) Review Soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. Pre-exercise activities include MAPEXs combined with sand table exercises that match the terrain to be used during the STX.

    c. Exercise instructions.

(1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.

(2) The tasks that support this STX must be executed to standard.

(3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.

(4) MILES should be used when feasible.

(5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.

(6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.

(7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated.

(8) Start the exercise when the evaluated unit receives the WARNO. End the exercise when the evaluated unit has conducted consolidation and reorganization.

(9) Conduct this exercise under all environmental conditions: during periods of daylight and limited visibility, under the threat of NBC attacks, air and ground force attacks, indirect fire attacks, and EW attacks.

   d. Sample scenario.

      (1) Summary of the enemy situation.

(a) Background. The US has a treaty agreement with the Alpha Republic that declares the US intent to support any newly elected democratic government with both economic and military aid. In a recent election, the citizens of Alpha replaced the leadership of the Alpha Patriotic Front (APF) by electing a new Prime Minister and cabinet, pledging democratic reform within the country. The election, monitored by international observers, was very close with the winner managing only 53 percent of the popular vote. As a result, disgruntled supporters of the losing party have taken to the streets in various cities throughout the country. Some elements of the APF have refused to accept the election results and have threatened violence if a new election is not held within one month. Other factions within the country are politically, ethnically, and religiously allied with neighboring Beta Republic whose totalitarian regime had been strongly influencing the APF during the past decade. The government of Beta worked in vain to prevent the election of the democratic government now in power—a government it deemed to be more aligned with western democratic nations and far less favorable to Beta interests.

(b) The Alpha and Beta Republics have been belligerents for almost 200 years, actually going to war about 85 years ago. While the two countries have many citizens who share a common religion and ethnic background, the governments of the two emerging nations have chosen different economic and social paths. The current border between the two countries, set by international agreement and arbitration after the last war in 1915, has continued to be a source of conflict and disagreement for more than 85 years. The Mongrel Republic, the country bordering the Alpha Republic on the north, has generally remained neutral during past disagreements between Alpha and Beta, but they have made no secret of their desire to possess a critical natural resource available only in northeast Alpha.

(c) Belligerent Forces: Alpha Army, paramilitary forces, and religious, political, and other factions. Beta Army and paramilitary and terrorist forces.

(d) Composition: The Alpha Army is at 50 percent strength. The Beta Army is at 80 percent strength. The paramilitary forces from both countries operate without a clearly defined order of battle but can be expected to fight in squad to platoon-size groups. Paramilitary forces are not well armed and normally operate dismounted but occasionally employ modified civilian vehicles equipped with small arms.

(e) Recent Activities: Paramilitary forces from Alpha threatened that a defeat of the APF in the recent election might trigger wide-scale violence and the use of a biological agent to poison the water supply throughout the country.

(2) Concept. The battalion will conduct any or all of the following tasks, on order, to establish and maintain stability in the AO.

(a) Conduct intelligence-gathering activities.

(b) Establish a quick reserve force to respond to sites of civil disturbance.

(c) Man observation posts (OPs).

(d) Man checkpoints and create roadblocks.

(e) Conduct patrols.

(f) Provide escorts for military and or civilian movement as required.

(g) Secure selected sites (for example, voting sites, refugee camps, schools and churches).

(h) Enforce curfews.

(i) Stabilize areas where there are escalating tensions.

(j) Open and secure routes as required.

(k) Conduct weapons site inspections as required.

4. **General Situation.** The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of the 1st Brigade. The battalion is occupying a base camp 2 kms west of the Akusk Airport in the Alpha Republic. Base camp security has been established. The battalion has been given an O/O mission to conduct security operations in the AO. Local populous and factions may or may not be cooperative.

5. **Special Situation.** Your platoon (1/A/1-25 IN) has been designated as the reserve force. The platoon has rehearsed possible contingency operations required of the reserve force. Your platoon receives a battalion FRAGO to react to a civil disturbance. See Figures 4-3 and 4-4.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 01

References. OPORD 01.

Map Series. No change to OPORD.

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

1. **SITUATION.**

    a. Enemy forces.

        (1) Political and other factions.

2. **MISSION.** 1/A/1-25 IN reacts to a civil disturbance NLT _____ near the Northern perimeter fence of the Akusk Airport (grid) to establish order and detain known belligerent participants and activities.

3. **EXECUTION.** Per TSOP.

4. **SERVICE SUPPORT.** Per TSOP.

5. **COMMAND AND SIGNAL.** BN main CP currently located at base camp.

    ACKNOWLEDGE.

    _____
    Commander

Figure 4-3. Example of a fragmentary order.
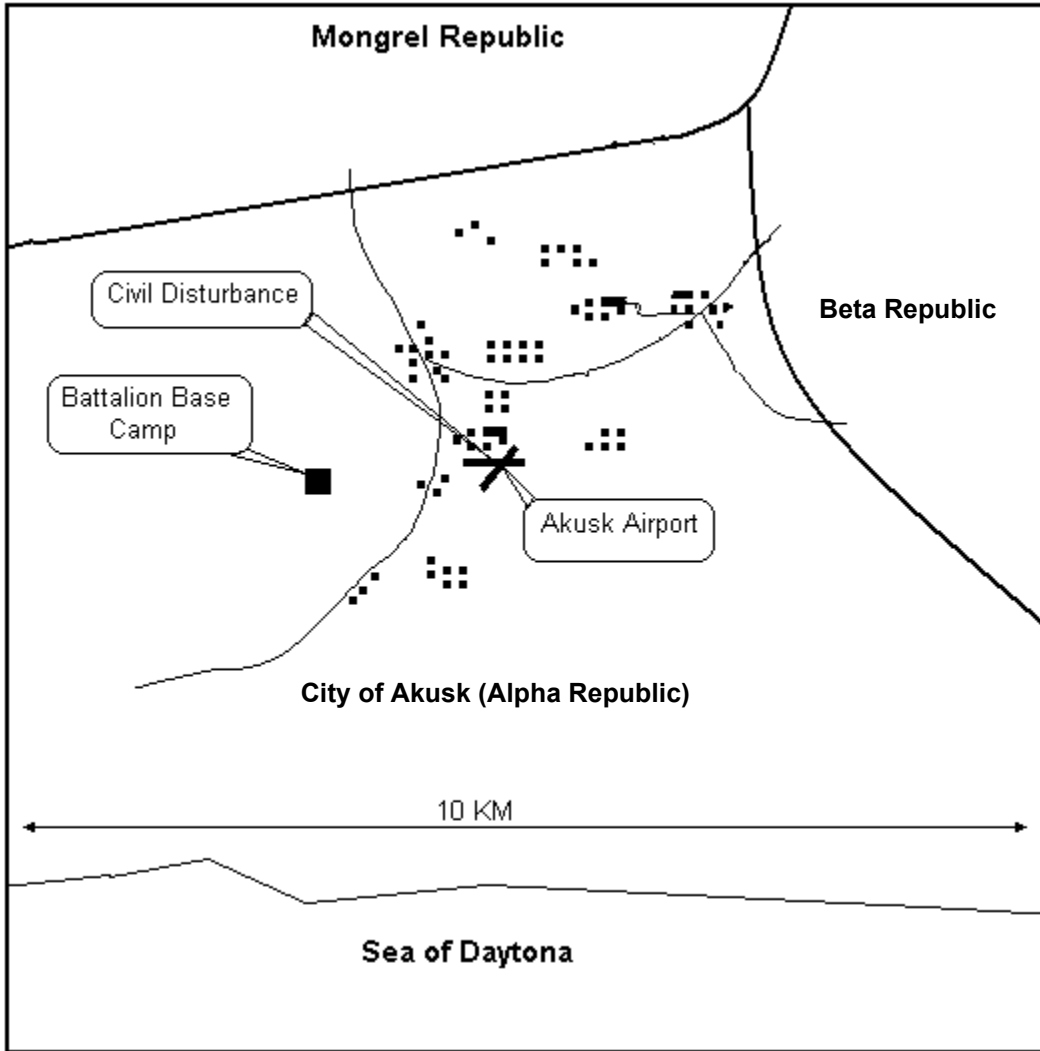
Figure 4-4. Example of a map of the area of operations.

6. **Support Requirements.** The support requirements for the STX are the consolidated requirements for the company plus attachments. Table 4-10 is an example of consolidated support requirements.

Table 4-10. Example list of consolidated support requirements.

EXAMPLE	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100 percent of TOE ERC A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system.	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240B machine gun system.	1 per M240B (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns.	3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture.	x7200 3 each (2 each for evaluators, 1 each for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel).	
a. Class I:	
(1) MRE	3 each meals per Soldier per day
(2) Potable water	1 each 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required.)	
c. Class V:	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each M249
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) Simulator, Launching TOE (DODIC) L592	1 ea per TOW
(4) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per SOP for each M203
(5) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 each per rifleman
(6) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 each per rifleman
(7) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 per platoon
(8) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 per platoon
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

7.   **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-11 is an example of T&EOs.

Table 4-11. Example of training and evaluation outlines.

Task	Task Number
Conduct Troop-leading Procedures	07-3-5036
Prepare for Combat	07-3-5081
Conduct a Rehearsal	07-3-5000
React to a Civil Disturbance	07-3-1396
Secure Civilians During Operations	07-3-4036
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	07-3-5009

Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. Introduction. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

    a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

    b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

    c. References. These are in parentheses following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is underlined and listed first. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.

    d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

    e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data. Leader input is submitted to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

        (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

        (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

        (3) U - Untrained. The unit has failed to demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

    f. Condition. This is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

    g. Task standard.

        (1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also allows the evaluator a means to rate the unit's demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO" and provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, task numbers, and task title.

l. OPFOR standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards also ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify who must be accomplished and not how it can be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Use. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Table 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENTS: THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
     BN MORTAR PLT HQ
     RECON PLT HQS
     MORTAR PLATOON HQS
     3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
     60MM MORTAR SECTION
     RECON PLAT HQS
     RECON PLATOON HQ
     MORTAR PLATOON HQ
     3 RIFLE PLT HQ
     RECON PLATOON
     MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
     MORTAR SECTION
     SCOUT PLT HQ
     HVY MORTAR PLT HQ

TASK: Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-2027)
   (FM 21-60)   (FM 24-19)   (FM 24-33)
   (FM 24-35)   (FM 24-35-1)   (FM 34-40-7)
   (FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))   (FM 7-7)
   (FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-8)   (FM 7-85)
   (FM 7-90)   (FM 7-92)

      ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

      COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and is experiencing radio frequency interference. Jamming of communications necessitates implementation of electronic warfare (EW). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon operates in an electronic warfare environment in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon recognizes the type of interference. The platoon acts to defeat the effects of jamming interference. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
2. The platoon troubleshoots and isolates to determine the nature of the interference. a. Detects internal equipment problems by disconnecting antenna. b. Investigates the possibility that interference is caused by nearby equipment, friendly communications, or atmospheric conditions. c. Identifies type of jamming signal based on type of emission and audio characteristics.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The platoon recognizes electronic attack and implements electronic protection.		

4. The platoon uses countermeasures to enable communications to resume.
   a. Continues to operate and does not disclose, in the clear, the effectiveness of the jamming.
   b. Reduces transmission speed.
   c. Increases transmitter power.
   d. Relocates antenna. A directional antenna can be used.
   e. Changes to alternate frequency when directed.
   f. Uses alternate means of communications.
     (1) Land lines.
     (2) Courier.		

5. The platoon takes the following action to defeat imitative electronic devices.
   a. Authenticates as required by the signal operation instructions.
   b. Avoids acting on improperly authenticated messages. (Message is passed to addressee with the note "Not authenticated" or "Improperly authenticated".)		

* 6. The platoon leader prepares and submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference report using the correct format.
   a. Contains, at a minimum:
     (1) Date and time.
     (2) Unit.
     (3) Interference.
     (4) Location.
     (5) On time.
     (6) Off time.
     (7) Effects.
     (8) Frequency.
     (9) Narrative.
     (10) Authentication.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                    60MM MORTAR SECTION
                    FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                    MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-2045)
      (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon has received an order to occupy a new firing position, and it has just enough time to conduct a ground reconnaissance. Latest intelligence indicates that the enemy left the area recently and quickly, without removing his mines and obstacles. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces and noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The enemy did not surprise either the advance party or the main body. The leader of the advance party (if any) issued a contingency plan to stay-behind unit(s) before departing, and then reconnoitered primary and alternate routes. The advance party or, if no advance party, the mortar platoon, reconnoitered at least two firing positions from which to support the company, and then prepared them. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		

* 2. Leader performed a map reconnaissance and planned a ground reconnaissance.
    a. Chose at least two tentative firing positions.
    b. Chose a tentative covered and concealed route(s) to the new firing positions.
    c. Ensured that the reconnaissance plan would allow the unit or advance party to avoid known and suspected contaminated areas and obstacles, when possible.
    d. Identified the tentative location(s) for pre-positioned supplies and ammunition.
    e. Ensured that the advance party, if used, included--
        (1) A designated leader.
        (2) The ability to compute firing data.
        (3) Communications with the main body.
        (4) A guide for a base mortar squad.		

                    1 April 2005

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(5) The ability to detect and monitor chemical and radiological contamination.
   (6) An aiming circle and operator, if the leader wanted a prepared position.
 f. Identified areas for tentative en route hipshoot firing positions.
 g. Included, but did not limit the advance party to--
  (1) Personnel.
   (a) Platoon leader.
   (b) Platoon sergeant.
   (c) Section sergeant.
  (2) Equipment.
   (a) A vehicle with a radio, a map, a compass, binoculars, chemical and nuclear detection equipment, and a global positioning system (GPS), if available.
   (b) A map, a grid sheet, overlay paper, a coordinate scale, and a protractor.
   (c) A declinated aiming circle; a field telephone; communications wire; a minefield; and a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warning sign.
   (d) An M23 mortar ballistic computer (MBC), an M16 plotting board, tabular firing tables (TFTs), and an updated weapons-location data card.
   (e) Marking stakes, tape, and a hammer.
   (f) Axes, shovels, an aiming post with lights, and flashlights.
 h. Requested and obtained battalion approval, company approval, or both for the new firing positions and route(s).
 	
 3. The mortar unit reconnoitered the route to the firing position.
  a. Verified the cover, concealment, and trafficability of the route.
  b. Selected and reconnoitered an alternate route, if needed.
  c. Reported route changes to the unit's main body and to battalion or company headquarters.
  d. Detected, marked, and reported all chemical or radiological contamination encountered.
  e. If time permitted, located and marked minefields and obstacles along the route.
  f. Estimated the time needed to reach the new firing position(s), and informed the main body.
  g. Verified en route hipshoot firing positions.
  h. Reported all key information to the main body before its movement.
  i. Marked routes as needed.
Note: Before each mission, the platoon leader designates the duration between position updates. These updates included (at a minimum), the current locations of the platoon leader, squad leaders, and vehicles. Position navigation aids (POSNAV) allow leaders to track their own locations and those of higher, adjacent, and subordinate units; supplement, but do not replace, basic navigational skills; help leaders plan their routes; provide directional information for movement and target acquisition; and augment operational planning graphics such as checkpoints, boundaries, coordination points, and phase lines.
 	
 4. The mortar unit reconnoitered and selected the firing position that--
  a. Allowed the section or platoon to provide indirect-fire support to the company or battalion, when consistent with the mission.
  b. Satisfied the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Allowed the mortars to fire at least one-half of their range to the front of forward-supported elements.		
d. Sat far enough from forward-supported elements to allow the mortars to place final-protective fires (FPFs) immediately to their front.		
e. Provided maximum coverage of forward-supported elements' frontage, consistent with priority targets and priority of fires.		
f. Allowed entry without enemy ground observation.		
g. Covered occupants from direct fire and low-angle indirect fire.		
h. Concealed occupants from air and ground observation.		
i. Avoided high-speed approaches from the forward edge of the battle area (FEBA).		
j. Allowed entry and exit by at least two routes.		
k. Permitted communications between mortar squads and their fire direction center (FDC).		
l. Offered convenient access to routes for resupply and future displacement.		
m. Masked all mortars, yet left overhead clearance (800 mils to left and right of mounting azimuth).		
n. Masked all mortars, yet left overhead clearance (800 to 1511 mils elevation for 60-mm, 81-mm, and 120-mm mortars).		
o. Contained no chemical or radiological contamination.		
5. The advance party prepared the new firing position.		
a. Established local security.		
b. If terrain permitted, selected and marked mortar positions at intervals of--		
(1) From 25 to 30 meters (60-mm mortar).		
(2) From 35 to 45 meters (81-mm mortar).		
(3) From 60 meters (120-mm mortar [60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS]).		
c. Checked firing position and nearby terrain for mines, NBC contamination, and enemy forces.		
d. Selected a covered and concealed FDC position.		
e. Prepared the aiming circle.		
f. Marked direction of fire for mortars.		
g. Prepared MBC, plotting boards, or both for the new position.		
h. Performed rough lay of the mortar position.		
i. Selected squad sectors, tentative obstacle locations, supplementary defensive positions, and exit routes.		
j. Identified covered and concealed hide positions.		
k. Identified alternate and supplementary defensive positions.		
6. The platoon complied with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-2054)

(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)
(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The platoon is required to report tactical information such as priority intelligence requirements (PIR) or platoon status. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon reports tactical information in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon reports tactical information using secure means and the proper format.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader submits reports using FM or other tactical means. a. Consolidates and submits spot reports to higher headquarters using the acronym "SALUTE" (size, activity, location, unit and or uniform, time, and equipment). (1) Reports size: The number of personnel and equipment. (2) Reports activity: What is the enemy doing or the absence of enemy. (3) Reports location: Grid coordinates and direction and speed of movement (if moving). (4) Reports unit: As shown by patches, signs, markings, or uniforms. (5) Reports time: When the activity was observed. (6) Reports equipment: Describes or identifies all equipment. b. Reports using the most secure means available.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Submits a situation report (SITREP) or other command required report IAW the OPORD, the TSOP, or guidance from higher HQ.
    d. Submits a nuclear, biological, and chemical 1 or 4 report (NBC 1 or NBC 4) using the correct format.
Note: The NBC 1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).
    e. Forwards reports using no more than two transmissions.
 	
  3. The platoon updates reports as the situation changes.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-2027	Operate in an Electronic Warfare Environment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: BN MORTAR PLT HQ
              THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
              RECON PLT HQS
              MORTAR PLATOON HQS
              3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
              RECON PLAT HQS
              RECON PLATOON HQ
              MORTAR PLATOON HQ
              3 RIFLE PLT HQ
              RECON PLATOON
              MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
              MORTAR SECTION
              SCOUT PLT HQ
              HVY MORTAR PLT HQ

TASK: Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-1081)

(FM 100-14)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))
(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)
(FM 7-92)		

        ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

        COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a linkup at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts the linkup in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon conducts necessary coordination, confirms command relationship with the linkup element, moves tactically to the linkup site, and establishes communications with the linkup element short of the linkup site. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: It is possible for a digital force and an analog force to conduct operations together, such as a linkup. Because of the differences in data transfer and or communications equipment, liaison must take place early and continuously.		
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 3. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
       (1) Identifies primary and alternate linkup sites.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Identifies near and far rally points.
      (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
      (4) Identifies routes to and from linkup site and rally point.
      (5) Marks tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.
    b. Develops a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions).
    c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
    d. Develops a fire support plan.
      (1) Coordinates indirect fire support.
    e. Determines digital, visual, and or voice recognition signals (far and near).
    f. Develops and or determines control measures.
    g. Determines frequencies, call signs, codes and code words.
    h. Determines command relationship with the linkup unit.
    i. Develops contingency plans for --
      (1) Enemy contact before, during, or after linkup.
      (2) How long to wait at the linkup site.
      (3) What to do when some elements do not arrive at the linkup site.
      (4) Alternate linkup points and rally points.
    j. Organizes the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
 	
* 4. The platoon leader conducts a reconnaissance of the route and site, if possible.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader or designated representative coordinates with the linkup element.
    a. Exchanges frequencies, call signs, codes and or code words.
    b. Confirms visual signals and alternatives (near and far recognition signals).
    c. Exchanges fire coordination/control measures (for example, restrictive fire line).
    d. Confirms command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup?) (Who is in charge after linkup?)
 	
* 6. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.
 	
   8. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.
 	
* 9. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.
 	
 10. Each linkup element moves to a point short of the linkup point and establishes a rally point.
Note: The linkup rally point should be a safe distance from the linkup point (about 300 meters) and should provide cover and concealment.
    a. Enters way points into positive navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.
    b. Moves tactically to the linkup rally point.
    c. Reports its en route location to higher headquarters and other linkup element (if using radio communications) using phase lines, checkpoints, or other control measures.
    d. Establishes local security at the rally point.
 	
*11. Elements conduct linkup.
    a. Conduct the following (FIRST platoon/element to arrive at the linkup point).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Sends a security team forward to confirm the exact location of the linkup point (may be mounted or dismounted and may include the platoon leader). (a) Clears the immediate area around the linkup point. (b) Marks the linkup point with the coordinated recognition signal. (c) Positions security team in covered and concealed positions that over watch the linkup point. (d) Returns to the linkup rally point and brings the platoon forward to the linkup point (if the entire platoon must linkup). (May use designated signal.) Note: The first element on site becomes the stationary element before the linkup. (2) Platoon moves tactically to the linkup point. (a) Establishes a perimeter defense. (b) Prepares to accept the moving unit at the linkup point. (c) Establishes communications with the other element . b. Conduct the following (SECOND platoon/element to arrive at the linkup point). (1) Sends a security team forward to confirm the exact location of the linkup point. (2) Makes contact with the element at the linkup point. (a) Gives the far recognition signal. (b) Advances and exchanges near recognition signals with element on the linkup point. (3) Returns to the linkup rally point and brings the platoon forward to the linkup point (if the entire platoon must linkup). (May use designated signal.) (4) Platoon moves tactically to the linkup point. (a) Platoon is incorporated into the perimeter defense. 13. Elements continue the mission IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and or guidance from higher headquarters after the linkup.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1189	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1270	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2000	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2009	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-3009	Employ Fire Support (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Counterreconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to deny information to the enemy reconnaissance elements by active and passive means. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterreconnaissance IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conceals friendly information through operational security measures and engages and destroys the enemy reconnaissance elements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
              MORTAR PLATOON HQS
              3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
              RECON PLAT HQS
              RECON PLATOON HQ
              MORTAR PLATOON HQ
              3 RIFLE PLT HQ
              RECON PLATOON
              MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
              MORTAR SECTION
              SCOUT PLT HQ
              HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
              BN MORTAR PLT HQ
              THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1099)

(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a forward or rearward passage of lines at the location and time specified. The stationary unit has been identified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts the passage of lines in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon completes necessary coordination with higher, adjacent, and stationary elements. The platoon passes through the stationary unit with no compromise of security. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 3. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
       (1) Identifies passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
       (2) Identifies security, support by fire, and assault positions, if applicable.
       (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
       (4) Marks tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available. c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities. d. Organizes the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses. e. Verifies known obstacle types and locations. f. Verifies call signs and frequencies of the stationary unit. g. Verifies and or designates visual recognition signals (far and near). h. Verifies and or designates fire coordination measures. i. Verifies the command relationship with the stationary unit. j. Verifies actions to take place following coordination of the passage.		
* 4. The platoon leader addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy before during and after passage.		
* 5. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.		
* 6. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.		
7. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.		
* 8. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.		

* 9. If face-to-face coordination is required, the platoon leader or platoon sergeant (PSG) conducts linkup with the stationary unit.
a. Enters way points into position navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.
b. Initiates tactical movement toward the designated contact point as directed in the OPORD and or FRAGO.
c. Establishes communications with the stationary unit prior to entering the effective range of the stationary unit's direct fire weapons.
    (1) Authenticates correctly.
    (2) Informs the stationary unit of number and type of platoon vehicles and direction from which the platoon is traveling.
    (3) Requests information from the stationary unit on number and type of vehicles, direction of weapons orientation, and location of dismounts on the ground.
    (4) Determines whether platoon is needed to provide additional security at the contact point.
    (5) Confirms short-range recognition signal (hand-and-arm, flags, VS-17, flashlight, or pyrotechnics).		

*10. The platoon leader or designated representative conducts coordination with the stationary unit using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
Note: The platoon leader or designated representative may be required to coordinate the passage of lines either for the platoon alone or for the higher headquarters.
a. Exchanges and or coordinates the following information:
    (1) Signal operating instructions (SOI) information.
    (2) Number and or type of vehicles involved in the passage.
    (3) Estimated time of arrival of vehicles and markings of the first and last vehicles.
    (4) Recognition signals.
    (5) Updated enemy situation.
    (6) Friendly situation/disposition.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(7) Terrain analysis.		
(8) Supporting fires information, to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers/locations.		
(9) Locations of friendly obstacles and applicable breaching information, to include any routes through obstacles.		
(10) Command post location.		
(11) Contact points (primary, alternate).		
(12) Passage lanes data, to include alternate routes, start point (SP), release point (RP), passage points, and checkpoints.		
(13) Location and number of guides and number and type of vehicles.		
(14) Time of passage.		
(15) Rally points (both near and far) and assembly areas.		
(16) Line of departure (LD).		
(17) Battle handover line (BHL) and time the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector will take place.		
(18) Combat service support (CSS) information, including the following:		
(a) Resupply of Classes III and V.		
(b) Medical evacuation assets.		
(c) Handling of enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
(d) Maintenance requirements and available assets.		
(19) Actions on contact if enemy is encountered during the passage.		
*11. The platoon leader or the PSG completes coordination and preparations for the passage.		
a. Conducts tactical movement back to the platoon position, if applicable.		
b. Passes all pertinent information and or FRAGO to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
c. Reports all pertinent information from the coordination to the commander, if acting as liaison for higher headquarters using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
d. Directs vehicle commanders to complete troop-leading procedures required to plan the passage.		
*12. The platoon leader updates the enemy situation.		
*13. The platoon leader disseminates updated digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.		
14. The platoon conducts tactical movement to the passage point.		
a. Enters way points into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation.		
b. Uses covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.		
c. Uses most advantageous formation and movement technique based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
d. Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security based on the formation selected.		
15. On order from the platoon leader or the PSG, the platoon moves through the passage point.		
a. Establishes communications and or enters the net of the stationary unit using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
b. Displays designated recognition signal on all vehicles, if applicable (vehicle commanders).		
c. Reports arrival time at the passage point to the commander using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
d. Ensures the platoon passes through the passage point without halting or		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
blocking it.		

16. The platoon moves along the passage lane.
    a. Conducts tactical movement through the passage lane.
    b. Orients weapon systems in the direction of known or suspected enemy contact.
    c. Follows directions given by guides at traffic control points.
    d. Uses alternate lanes if the situation dictates.
Note: In the event of vehicle breakdown, the platoon continues to move and does not stop in the passage lane. The crew of the disabled vehicle moves it out of the flow of traffic, if possible, and attempts to repair it. If necessary, the crew waits with the vehicle until it can be recovered or repaired.
 	
*17. The platoon leader or the PSG keeps the commander informed using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    a. Reports graphic control measures for passage.
    b. Sends SITREP as necessary during execution.
    c. Reports completion of the passage.
 	
18. If the passage is forward, the platoon crosses the BHL and continues the mission.
 	
19. If the passage is rearward, the platoon crosses the BHL and takes specified actions.
    a. Moves to the location designated in the OPORD without halting or blocking the passage lane.
    b. Conducts the steps for hasty occupation of an assembly area or for troop-leading procedures as specified in the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1027	Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1252	Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire (Antiarmor/Infantry Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to employ deception measures to confuse the enemy and to prevent the enemy from determining the OPFOR intentions or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as the use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
                 MORTAR PLATOON HQS
                 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
                 RECON PLAT HQS
                 RECON PLATOON HQ
                 MORTAR PLATOON HQ
                 3 RIFLE PLT HQ
                 RECON PLATOON
                 MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                 MORTAR SECTION
                 SCOUT PLT HQ
                 HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
                 BN MORTAR PLT HQ
                 THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Conduct a Relief in Place (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1135)
      (<u>FM 7-8</u>)   (FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
      (FM 7-7)   (FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-85)
      (FM 7-90)   (FM 7-92)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a relief in place at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate and relieved elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts the relief in place in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon conducts necessary coordination, moves tactically to designated contact point, and occupies relieved unit's positions as directed. Responsibility for the fight is coordinated and executed as soon as possible without allowing the enemy an advantage. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 3. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
       (1) Identifies/confirms contact points.
       (2) Identifies routes to and from contact points.
       (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
       (4) Marks tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if necessary.		
c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.		
d. Organizes the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.		
e. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.		
* 4. The platoon leader coordinates and or exchanges the information with the relieved unit IAW the TSOP, the OPORD or FRAGO, and or guidance from higher headquarters.		
a. Coordinates and or exchanges information.		
(1) Location of vehicle and or individual fighting positions (to include hide, alternate, and supplementary positions).		
(2) Outgoing unit's tactical plan, to include graphics, platoon and squad fire plans, and individual vehicles' and or platoon sector sketches.		
(3) Updated enemy situation.		
(4) Fire support coordination, including indirect fire plans and the time of relief for supporting artillery and mortar units.		
(5) Types of weapon systems being replaced.		
(6) Range cards for all weapons.		
(7) Location and disposition of obstacles and the time responsibility will be transferred.		
(8) Counterattack plans.		
(9) Plans for other tasks the platoon may have been tasked to perform.		
(10) Supplies and equipment to be transferred.		
(11) Movement control, route priority, and placement of guides.		
(12) Maintenance, logistical support, and evacuation, if necessary, for disabled vehicles.		
(13) Time, sequence, and method of relief.		
(a) Simultaneous.		
(b) Sequential.		
(14) Communications data.		
(a) Frequencies.		
(b) Filters for digital equipment.		
(c) Signals.		
(d) Challenge and password.		
(15) Battle handover procedures for artillery and ADA, if applicable.		
* 5. The platoon leader and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance (based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC]).		
a. Enters way points into position navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.		
b. Reconnoiters routes into and out of the position.		
c. Reconnoiters any assembly areas to be used.		
d. Reconnoiters logistics points.		
e. Reconnoiters primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.		
f. Reconnoiters obstacles.		
g. Reconnoiters contact points.		
h. Reconnoiters patrol routes (primary and alternate) and observation post (OP) locations, when possible.		
i. Verifies and updates priority intelligence requirements.		
j. Posts security, if required.		
k. Returns to platoon position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.		
* 7. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.		
8. The platoon conducts rehearsal.		
* 9. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.		

10. The platoon executes the relief in place.
    a. Maintains operations security (OPSEC), taking these actions:
        (1) Changes frequencies on all platoon radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit.
        (2) Maintains radio listening silence (if specified in the OPORD or FRAGO).
        (3) Adheres to noise, light, and litter discipline.
    b. Initiates movement, taking these actions:
        (1) Moves to predetermined contact points and meets guides from the relieved unit.
            (a) Enters way points into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation.
        (2) Collocates command post (CP) with relieved unit CP.
        (3) Moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information.
    c. Occupies, as necessary, preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief. The following procedures apply:
        (1) Occupies positions behind the unit to be relieved as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.
        (2) Maintains security.
        (3) Reports to the platoon leader when occupation is complete (section and squad leaders).
        (4) Reports to the company commander when the platoon is prepared to conduct the relief (platoon leader).
    d. Completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit.
        (1) Updates the enemy situation.
        (2) Completes transfer of sector sketches and fire plans.
        (3) Completes transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
        (4) Reports to the company commander that preparations for the relief are complete.
    e. Conducts the relief.
        (1) Transfers equipment and supplies as required.
Note: The relieving unit remains under operational control (OPCON) to the relieved unit until the entire relieving unit is in place and prepared to assume the mission.
        (2) Conducts battle handover, with relieving unit accepting responsibility.
        (3) Moves to specified positions in the determined sequence of relief using covered and concealed routes and maintaining a 360-degree security. (May be lead by relieved unit guides).		

*11. The section and or the squad leaders report completion of the relief to the platoon leader.		
*12. The platoon leader reports completion of the relief in place to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-2063	Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-1081	Conduct a Link-up (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2000	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2009	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2018	Establish an Observation Post (OP) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-3009	Employ Fire Support (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (07-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR prevents the enemy from obtaining information about its operations and or intent. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR maintains operations security IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR denies information to the enemy by maintaining physical security, signal security, and information security. The OPFOR identifies and eliminates indicators that can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to employ deception measures to confuse the enemy and to prevent the enemy from determining the OPFOR intentions or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as the use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
            3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
            RECON PLAT HQS
            RECON PLATOON HQ
            3 RIFLE PLT HQ
            RECON PLATOON
            SCOUT PLT HQ
            THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-1171)

      (FM 21-18)   (FM 7-7)   (FM 7-7J)
      (FM 7-8)   (FM 7-85)   (FM 7-92)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a tactical road march using the specified route and start time. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants, to include the international press, may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts the tactical road march in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon crosses the start point and release point at the time specified in the order. The platoon follows the prescribed route, rate of march, and interval without deviation unless required by enemy action or higher headquarters' orders. Platoon maintains local security throughout the movement. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: A company may be required to conduct a tactical road march. However, the company and platoon normally participate in a tactical road march as part of a battalion/task force.		
* 1. Platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. Platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 3. Platoon leader plans the tactical road march using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
       (1) Identifies the route if not provided.
       (2) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
       (3) Marks tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.
       (4) Identifies critical areas. (for example; danger areas, defiles, and choke points, traffic control points, as well as rest and maintenance areas.
       (5) Determines assembly area or bivouac areas.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(6) Identifies start point (SP) and release point (RP).
   b. Determines the formation to be used.
   c. Determines time at which the head or tail of the column is to pass the SP and critical points.
   d. Determines rate of march.
   e. Determines march interval.
   f. Determines order of march.
   g. Communications for use during the march.
   h. Location of command post.
   i. Determines quartering party requirements.
   j. Determines/coordinates combat service support (CSS) requirements.
   k. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support if available.
   l. Develops graphic control measures; e.g., check points, phase lines, scheduled halt points.
   m. Organizes the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
   n. Determines the Soldier's load, based on the mission.
   o. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
 	
 * 4. Platoon leader organizes and dispatches reconnaissance element if time permits.
   a. Enters waypoints into position navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.
   b. Confirms available routes and conditions (routes may be specified by higher headquarters).
   c. Confirms SP and RP suitability.
   d. Confirms assembly or bivouac area location.
   e. Confirms checkpoint locations on the route if required.
   f. Confirms distance between checkpoints on the route and total distance from SP to RP.
   g. Locates and marks obstacles.
   h. Determines the number of guides required and their route location.
 	
 * 5. Platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
 * 6. Platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.
 	
   7. Platoon conducts a rehearsal.
 	
 * 8. Platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.
 	
   9. Platoon moves to a marshalling area as necessary.
   a. Enters waypoints into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation as required.
 	
 *10. Platoon leader briefs and dispatches the quartering party if required. (If conducting the road march as part of a higher headquarters, quartering party activities may not be required of the platoon.)
   a. Enters waypoints into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation.
   b. Conducts reconnaissance tasks if time did not permit the dispatching of a reconnaissance element.
   c. Provides guides along the route as necessary.
   d. Reports and engages any enemy observed as ordered.
 	
 *11. Platoon leader directs platoon to begin movement toward the SP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Enters waypoints into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation.
    b. Uses the designated formation, movement technique, and, rate of march.
    c. Positions himself where he can best control the movement of the platoon.
    d. Uses visual signals, FBCB2, and or FM radio to communicate with platoon IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and or TSOP.
 	
12. Platoon moves along the march route.
    a. Crosses the SP at the designated time IAW OPORD or FRAGO.
    b. Maintains proper march speed to reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.
    c. Reports control measures IAW OPORD/FRAGO/TSOP using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    d. Maintains 360 degree observation including aerial observation.
    e. Maintains proper weapons orientation to provide 360 degree security throughout the road march as prescribed in the OPORD, FRAGO, and or TSOP.
    f. Updates POSNAV systems if applicable.
    g. Conducts scheduled halts at regular intervals IAW the TSOP (as the tactical situation permits).
        (1) Directs personnel to clear the route and to relax by sitting or lying down and by loosening their equipment.
          (a) Maintains security as necessary.
        (2) Conducts foot inspections.
        (3) Ensures platoon maintains water, sanitation, light, noise, and safety discipline.
        (4) Adjusts personnel loads if necessary.
    h. Arrives at check or release points at the time specified.
    i. Bypasses obstacles if possible.
    j. Reports the platoon's position to higher headquarters as required.
 	
13. Platoon conducts unscheduled halts as necessary.
    a. Clears route of march and establishes local security IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and or TSOP.
    b. Reports unscheduled halts to higher headquarters using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    c. Rectifies the cause of the halt if possible.
    d. Continues along the route.
 	
14. Platoon reacts to hostile contact as appropriate.
    a. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
    b. Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
    c. Treats and evacuates casualties.
    d. Continues the march when directed or as soon as possible.
 	
15. Platoon arrives at and moves through the RP.
    a. Reports arrival at and the completion of the move through the RP using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    b. Passes through the release point without halting.
    c. Meets and follows quartering party guides and moves to the designated platoon area.
    d. Adjusts and redistributes equipment and performs foot hygiene.
    e. Orients weapons, as directed, to establish unit local security.
    f. Ensures leaders check the condition of all personnel (for foot problems).
        (1) Ensures that Soldiers obtain food, water, shelter, and rest.
        (2) Ensures Soldiers are ready to accomplish their tactical mission.
        (3) Ensures medical attention where needed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Uses the proper dispersion and camouflage.
  h. Performs equipment cross loading as necessary.
  i. Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.
  j. Processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
  k. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
16. Platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-1459	Take Action on Contact (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-2063	Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5054	Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-1045	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1432	Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XB-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2000	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2009	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-3009	Employ Fire Support (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5009	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5081	Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (07-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR prevents the enemy from obtaining information about its operations and or intent. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR maintains operations security IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR denies information to the enemy by maintaining physical security, signal security, and information security. The OPFOR identifies and eliminates indicators that can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Defend Against a Ground Attack (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-1297)
(<u>FM 7-7</u>)   (FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-8)
(FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in the battalion rear area providing indirect fire support during an operation. An enemy force attacks the unit in its firing position. The unit has alternate firing positions established. The attacking force's size and composition are such that the mortar platoon can repel the attack and relocate to its alternate position. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon moves to where the enemy can neither observe nor place direct fire on it in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon reports contact to the commander. The platoon complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from FORCE XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

2. Platoon leader plans, coordinates, and controls the establishment of the defense as follows:
    a. Analyzes the enemy situation based on intelligence reports.
    b. Develops an overall defense plan.
    c. Analyzes the potential engagement areas based on avenues of approach.
    d. Conducts terrain analysis of the position area and surrounding terrain to determine from where the enemy will attack.
    e. Establishes time line and defense priorities.
        (1) Establishes local securities.
        (2) Positions and lays mortars.
        (3) Establishes fire direction center (FDC).
        (4) Improves mortar positions.
        (5) Emplaces obstacles.
    f. Coordinates with adjacent maneuver forces for early warning of enemy attacks.
Note: If necessary, the mortar platoon may have an infantry squad attached to enhance the mortar defense. If the mortar platoon is positioned near a friendly company, it should be integrated into the defense.		

3. Platoon leader, platoon sergeant (PSG), or designated representative conducts		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

linkup and adjacent unit coordination, focusing on the following critical requirements.
    a. Focuses on location of primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
    b. Focuses on sectors of fire.
    c. Focuses on location of dead space between the units and how to cover it.
    d. Focuses on visual and audible signals.
    e. Focuses on location of observation post(s).
    f. Focuses on patrols to be conducted, to include their size, type, time of departure and return, and routes.
 	
4. Platoon leader establishes defense plan ensuring the following:
    a. Establishes security considering units' TSOP, orders received, enemy situation, and terrain and visibility conditions.
        (1) Situates observation posts (OPs) along avenues of approach with covered and concealed routes to and from to provide early warning.
        (2) Employs sensors if available.
    b. Establishes security within the platoon's firing positions.
        (1) Assigns sectors of observations and fire.
        (2) Places crew served weapons along most likely enemy approaches.
        (3) Ties in adjacent squads and other units if applicable.
        (4) Emplaces obstacles.
        (5) Conducts stand-to as applicable.
Note: Platoon leader must designate a set number of unit personnel to be alert at all times.
    c. Ensures use of all available resources (for example, foliage and camouflage nets) to hide the unit from observation.
    d. Ensures unit personnel recognize warning signals and are familiar with the OPSEC portion of the TSOP.
    e. Ensures proper sitting of electronic equipment to reduce signature.
    f. Disperses unit vehicles to lessen vulnerability to attack.
    g. Prepares defense diagram depicting azimuths of fire for automatic weapons, final protective lines (FPLs), dead space, locations of M8 alarms, locations of OPs and LPs, and locations of defense targets. Forwards a copy of diagram to higher headquarters.
    h. Prevents entry of unauthorized vehicles into area.
    i. Keeps vehicle movement to a minimum.
    j. Maintains communications discipline.
        (1) Uses lowest power setting level without reducing mission requirements.
    k. Ensures subordinate leaders prepare range cards for their respective weapons.
    l. Ensures subordinate leaders know location of and routes to alternate position(s).
        (1) Establishes rally points.
 	
5. As time permits, platoon leader directs the platoon to continue improvement of the firing position or battle position (BP).
    a. Directs execution of additional steps of a deliberate occupation of a firing position or BP.
    b. Directs defensive priorities of work IAW OPORD, FRAGO and or TSOP.
 	
6. Platoon leader completes actions for deliberate occupation of the BP.
    a. Reports weapons-ready status and completion to the commander.
    b. Submits the completed fire plan.
    c. Implements changes based on guidance from the commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Updates sections and or squads on any changes or reports from commander or higher headquarters.		

7. Platoon improves fighting positions or BP and conducts defensive priorities of work as time permits.
    a. Improves primary vehicle and squad firing and fighting positions.
    b. Improves vehicle and squad camouflage protection.
    c. Conducts rehearsals based on time available.
    d. Maintains security and surveillance.
    e. Clears fields of fire.
    f. Conducts vehicle maintenance and prepare-to-fire checks.
    g. Establishes thermal target reference points (TRPs) IAW TSOP.
    h. Establishes wire communications IAW OPORD, FRAGO and or TSOP.
    i. Emplaces chemical alarms IAW OPORD, FRAGO and or TSOP.
    j. Emplaces PEWs or other warning devices IAW OPORD, FRAGO and or TSOP.
    k. Emplaces prestock ammunition and supplies.
    l. Emplaces decoys if available.
    m. Continues to improve supplementary firing positions or BPs.
    n. Conducts maintenance and resupply as directed in the OPORD.		

* 8. Platoon leader refines his portion of the commander's indirect fire plan.		
* 9. Platoon leader reports sighting of enemy in platoon's area of operation. Note: Sighting the enemy should not force the platoon to disclose its position.		

*10. Platoon defends against ground attack order or when engagement criteria are met.
    a. Employs and focuses direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy force and maintain survivability. (platoon leader).
    b. Shifts, refocuses, and redistributes direct fires to defeat identifies enemy elements. (platoon, section, or squad leader).
    c. Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan and or OPORD or FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force. (platoon leader or observers).
    d. Directs lifting and shifting of indirect fires. (platoon leader or observer).
      (1) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.
      (2) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy are achieved.
    e. Issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required. (platoon, section, or squad leader).
    f. Moves to remount points and alternates firing positions or BPs as required to maintain flexibility and survivability. (section or squad).
    g. Sends SPOTREPs and updated SITREPs and makes recommendations to the commander as necessary. (platoon, section, or squad leader).		

11. Platoon implements stay in position immediate action.
    a. Hardens positions (sandbagging, digging in, etc.) when possible.
    b. Continues to provide fire support from current position.		

12. Platoon implements movement and or displacement to alternate position. Note: In the conduct of a hasty displacement, survival and continued ability to accomplish the unit's mission are in balance. Consequently, all efforts must be directed toward quickly displacing. Items such as tentage, camouflage nets, and wires are left in position and recovered when the hostile fire ceases. a. Issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
meet the displacement criteria specified in the commander's guidance and or OPORD or FRAGO. (platoon, section or squad leader).		
(1) Platoon maintains communication at all times with higher headquarters and supporting units.		
b. Initiates final protective fires (FPF) if allocated and or authorized.		
c. Displaces to alternate fighting position or BP if overwatch is provided by supporting unit.		
(1) Conducts tactical movement to the alternate firing position or BP using covered and concealed routes while keeping all weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact.		
(2) Uses self-protection measures IAW the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(3) Enters successive alternate firing position or BP IAW TSOP.		
d. Displaces by sections to the alternate firing position or BP if overwatch is not provided by another platoon.		
(1) Stay-behind section continues to support supporting units and observe and or engage the enemy.		
(2) Displacing section begins movement toward the alternate firing position to establish hasty firing position.		
(3) Stay behind section begins movement on order toward the alternate firing position once the displacing section is underway.		
(4) Each section uses the appropriate formation and movement technique, follows a covered and concealed route, and keeps all weapons oriented in the direction of last known enemy contact.		
(5) Each section uses self-protection measures IAW METT-TC.		
(6) Each section enters successive alternate firing position or BP IAW TSOP.		
e. Conducts a hasty occupation of the alternate firing position. (see task: Occupation of Mortar Firing Position).		
(1) Platoon moves simultaneously into new positions.		
(2) Platoon leader designates defense control measures.		
(3) Platoon leader adjusts positions as necessary to cover the engagement area.		
(4) Platoon leader reports weapons up to the commander and moves into primary fighting positions.		
(5) Platoon performs additional steps of a deliberate occupation as time permits.		
f. Platoon leader sends a complete SITREP to the commander when displacement is completed.		
13. Platoon leader reorganizes after an attack as follows.		
a. Reorganizes as quickly as possible to enable the mission to continue.		
b. Reestablishes defense and security.		
c. Evacuates and or treats casualties as required.		
d. Assess damage to equipment and supplies.		
e. Adjust loads and accommodate for vehicle losses as applicable.		
f. Submits SITREP to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-1003	Prime Explosives Nonelectrically	CMF 11 (INFANTRY) STP 7-11C14-SM-TG
441-091-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT	STP 21-24-SMCT TASK FORCE SOLDIER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Displace by Echelon (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-1306)
(ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon receives the order to displace by echelon to new firing position(s). The mission requires the unit to provide indirect fire support. A squad-sized element has been patrolling routinely through the unit's area of operations along the same routes for several days. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon displaces by the time specified in the order. The unit follows the prescribed route without deviation unless required otherwise by enemy action or orders from higher headquarters. The mortar unit provides indirect fire support to the company or battalion within two minutes of occupying the firing position. The platoon complies with the ROE. The unit lays mortars and emplaces the aiming posts in new firing positions according to the following time standards:

	Reciprocal Lay		Place Out Aiming Post	
Number of mortars	Day	Night	Day	Night
One	2 min 15 sec	4 min	1 min 15 sec	3 min
Two	3 min 15 sec	5 min	2 min	3 min
Three	4 min 15 sec	7 min	2 min 30 sec	4 min
Four	5 min 15 sec	8 min 30 sec	3 min	4 min
Five	6 min 15 sec	10 min	3 min 30 sec	5 min
Six	7 min 15 sec	11 min 30 sec	4 min	5 min

If Unit is equiped with Mortar Fire Control System (MFCS) times are as follows:

Section Layed Ready to Fire

Day	Night
60 Seconds	1 Min 30 Seconds

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from FORCE XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The senior leader conducts troop-leading procedures and establishes the displacement plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Lessens the time that mortars are out of action.
b. Ensures indirect fire support to all supported units.
c. Includes alternate firing positions and routes.
 	
3. Displacing mortar element(s) displaces to its next firing position.
   a. Moves on order or when informed that the advance party has reached the new firing position.
   b. Takes a fire direction computer with the displacing element, if possible.
   c. Performs drill for Take Mortar Out of Action.
   d. Performs drill for Place Mortar Into Action.
   e. Performs drill for Reciprocal Lay With Aiming Circle, Reciprocal Lay Using the Mortar Sight; or Reciprocal Lay with M2 Compass.
 	
4. The stationary mortar element displaces from its firing position.
   a. Moves on order or when informed that the displaced element is ready to provide indirect fire.
   b. Performs drill for Take Mortar Out of Action.
   c. Provides indirect fire support throughout the other unit's movement (displaced element).
 	
5. The stationary mortar element(s) occupies new firing position.
   a. Performs drill; Place Mortar Into Action.
   b. Performs drills; Reciprocal Lay with Aiming Circle, Reciprocal Lay Using the Mortar Sight, or Reciprocal Lay with M2 Compass.
Note: See task, Occupy a Firing Position, for other applicable sub tasks and standards.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-1351	Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
07-3-2045	Reconnoiter a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
              MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
              FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
              MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Occupy a Firing Position (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-1351)
       (<u>ARTEP 7-90-DRILL</u>)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is conducting operations as part of a larger force and has received an operation or fragmentary order (OPORD or FRAGO) to occupy a firing position at a specified time. Latest intelligence indicates that a platoon-sized enemy element is withdrawing to establish defensive positions. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). If an advance party is available, then the position is already prepared when the platoon arrives, and vice versa. The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.

 Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon selected a firing position with good cover, concealment, natural lines of drift, multiple withdrawal routes, solid ground, and overhead and mask clearance; and that was located well away from human habitation (depending on the situation) and from known or suspected enemy locations. The platoon moved all personnel and equipment into their assigned positions no later than the time specified in the order. Within two minutes after occupying the mortar position, the mortar platoon was prepared to provide indirect-fire support to the company or battalion. The platoon was not surprised by the enemy.

If the mortar platoon sent an advance party to prepare the firing position, then the platoon completed the aiming circle before the weapon system carriers (81- and 120-mm mortars only) began to arrive. Timing began when the first mortar carrier halted in position.

If the mortar platoon did not send an advance party, then the platoon prepared the position themselves and did not complete the aiming circle in advance. Timing began either when the mortar platoon placed the aiming circle or M2 compass on the ground, or when the first mortar carrier halted in position, whichever occurred first. The mortar platoon laid and emplaced all mortars and aiming posts within the time standards in Table 1 (without the MFCS) or Table 2 (with MFCS).

The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

Table 1. Time standards without MFCS.

	Reciprocal Lay		Placement of Aiming Post	
Number of mortars	Day	Night	Day	Night
One	2 min 15 sec	4 min	1 min 15 sec	3 min
Two	3 min 15 sec	5 min	2 min	3 min
Three	4 min 15 sec	7 min	2 min 30 sec	4 min
Four	5 min 15 sec	8 min 30 sec	3 min	4 min
Five	6 min 15 sec	10 min	3 min 30 sec	5 min
Six	7 min 15 sec	11 min 30 sec	4 min	5 min

Table 2. Time standards with MFCS.

Section Laid and Ready to Fire
Day   Night

60 Seconds   1 Min 30 Seconds

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); and other available and applicable information sources.
 Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.
 	
 * 2. Leader conducted troop-leading procedures.
 	
 * 3. The mortar element senior leader planned and selected both a tentative and an alternate mortar firing position.
 Note: Position navigation aids (POSNAV) supplement, but do not replace, basic navigational skills; allow leaders to track their own locations and those of higher, adjacent, and subordinate units; provide directional information for movement and target acquisition; and augment operational planning graphics such as checkpoints, boundaries, coordination points, and phase lines.
 	
 4. The mortar element moved to occupy the position.
     a. Moved on covered and concealed routes.
     b. Avoided likely ambush sites and danger areas.
     c. Maintained operations security.
     d. Maintained all-round security.
 	
 * 5. The mortar element senior leader--
     a. Halted the element 200 to 400 meters from the tentative mortar firing position.
     b. Reconnoitered and confirmed the location of the position.
     c. Designated the point of entry as six o'clock.
     d. Designated the center of the base as the command post (CP) and, upon arrival there, designated the actual mortar firing positions.
 	
 * 6. Subordinate element leaders reconnoitered their assigned positions.
 	
 7. The mortar element occupied the mortar firing position.
     a. [Each subordinate element leader] Upon arriving in his firing position, designated the mortar firing positions.
     b. [Each gunner] Oriented the mortar in the designated direction of fire. If the terrain permitted, he established intervals between mortars of 25 to 30 meters for the 60mm; 35 to 45 meters for the 81mm; and 60 meters for the 120mm (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. [Each subordinate element leader] Ensured that the vehicles were positioned in defilade where natural camouflage concealed them. d. [Each subordinate element] Performed Crew Drill 1, "Place Mortar Into Action." e. [Element leader] Positioned the fire-direction center (FDC) near the middle of the firing positions so that the gunners could hear the FDC.		
8. The mortar element established all-round local security. a. [Leader] Positioned observation posts (OPs) to observe likely enemy avenues of approach, and to provide early warning to protect the main body from surprise. b. [Gunners] Oriented on likely enemy avenues of approach.		
9. The mortar element laid the mortars.		
10. Unless the advance party had already done this, the aiming circle operator correctly mounted, leveled, and oriented the aiming circle (81- and 120-mm mortars only).		
11. Element(s) performed one or more of the following: a. Crew Drill 2, "Reciprocal Lay With Aiming Circle." b. Crew Drill 3, "Reciprocal Lay Using the Mortar Sight." c. Crew Drill 4, "Reciprocal Lay with M2 Compass."		
12. The FDC prepared to receive calls for fire. a. Prepared the mortar ballistic computer (MBC) or plotting board. b. Completed the firing chart within 5 minutes of arrival, unless the FDC initialized the MBC for firing. Note 1: Digital enhancements change few indirect-fire procedures, but they do streamline the planning and calling of indirect fire. The ability to share information between echelons eases fire planning at all levels. For example, a platoon leader can get the fire-support overlay fast using the V2/3 computer module and the Dismounted Soldier-System Unit (DSSU). This lets leaders and soldiers call for fire digitally. Then, the digital call for fire can go to any indirect-fire asset on the net, but it normally routes through the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). Note 2: Timing for the FDC began simultaneously for the laying of the mortars.		
*13. Each subordinate element leader obtained an auxiliary aiming point for his squad's mortar. a. Chose an auxiliary aiming point. b. [Gunner] Obtained the deflection to the auxiliary aiming point. c. Recorded deflection to the auxiliary aiming point.		
14. The mortar element established internal wire communications. a. Ensured that every element had field telephone communications from its mortar position to the FDC. b. Within 10 minutes after aiming posts were emplaced, ensured that the field telephones were operational between the FDC and all elements.		
15. The mortar element constructed a mortar firing position. a. Marked the orientation of the firing position with luminous or reflective ground stakes. b. Established temporary mortar position either to the front or rear of the site where the unit was to construct the position. c. Camouflaged the position to blend with the surrounding terrain, using natural vegetation when possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Constructed the combat position.
       (1) Width -- three M16 rifle lengths across at the top, with the sides
          sloping slightly in toward the bottom.
       (2) Depth --18 to 20 inches (one-half the length of an M16) below ground
          level.
    e. Constructed a parapet around the dug-out part of the position.
       (1) Width -- 18 to 20 inches (one or two M16 lengths).
       (2) Openings -- one for the entrance to the position, and one each to the
          front and the rear, for sighting on the aiming posts.
Note: To re-lay the mortar after completing the parapet, the mortar platoon removed a part of the parapet. This allowed the aiming-circle operator to see the mortar sight. The unit constructed the firing position for the 120-mm mortar using the same procedure and dimensions as for the 60 and 81-mm mortars, except that the 120-mm's position should measure three-and-a-half M16 rifle lengths wide.
 	
 16. The mortar unit improved the firing position.
    a. [Leader] Developed a plan for unit defense and supervised its preparation.
    b. Built primary mortar positions.
    c. [Leader] Effectively integrated all available direct-fire weapons into the
       unit's perimeter defense.
    d. [Leader] Planned indirect fires on avenues of approach.
    e. Selectively cleared fields of fire.
    f. [Leader] Designated alternate mortar positions and confirmed
       supplementary ones.
    g. Rehearsed occupation of alternate and supplementary individual fighting
       positions.
    h. If time permitted, built alternate and supplementary mortar positions.
    i. Emplaced early-warning devices.
    j. [Leader] Developed obstacle plan. If time permitted, emplaced the
       obstacles.
    k. [Leader] Prepared sector sketches and marked--
       (1) Observation posts (OPs) and patrol routes, if any.
       (2) Maximum engagement lines (MELs) for primary weapon systems.
       (3) Mines and obstacles.
       (4) Squad positions (primary, alternate, and supplementary) and sectors
          of fire.
       (5) Direction of north.
       (6) Unit designation up to company level.
       (7) Date-time group.
       (8) Unit CP.
    l. [Leader] Forwarded the sector sketch to the company commander and kept
       a copy.
 	
Note: See task "Maintain Operations Security" for subtasks and standards related to camouflage.
 	
 17. The platoon complied with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-074-0012	Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad	CMF 11 (INFANTRY)
		STP 7-11C14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
9 RIFLE SQUADS
3 RECON SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON

TASK: Perform Air Assault Operations (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-1369)
        (<u>FM 90-4</u>)   (FM 1-113)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) and or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) that requires it to perform an air assault mission at the time specified. Higher headquarters has coordinated for aviation assets. Higher headquarters conduct indirect fire support planning. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon performs the air assault in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon members are briefed on loading, safety, and unloading procedures. The platoon arrives at the pickup zone (PZ) and loads as per the loading plan by the specified time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Air assault planning and coordination is normally conducted at battalion or higher headquarters. The battalion is the lowest level that has sufficient personnel to plan, coordinate, and control an air assault operation.		
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
* 3. The platoon leader attends the air mission briefing, if possible.		
* 4. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.
      (1) Identifies PZ and landing zone (LZ).
      (2) Identifies tentative security positions, if required.
      (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach into the PZ.
      (4) Marks tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps, if applicable.
    b. Confirms procedures for calling for indirect fires.
Note: Indirect fire availability will often be limited due to airspace control coordination.
    c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.
    d. Selects a straggler control point, if not assigned by higher headquarters, for bumped personnel.
    e. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader organizes the load and or personnel based on the allowable cargo load as stated in the TSOP, OPORD, and or FRAGO.
    a. Designates chalks and chalk leaders.
    b. Maintains tactical integrity (keeps teams and squads together on the same aircraft).
    c. Maintains self-sufficiency (keeps weapon systems [for example, machine guns, Javelins, and their crews] on the same aircraft with ammunition and components).
    d. Distributes key personnel and weapons among the aircraft.
      (1) Identifies possible enemy avenues of approach into and out of PZ and LZ.
      (2) Identifies obstacles and possible enemy defensive positions.
      (3) Identifies key terrain and possible covered and concealed locations for friendly and enemy forces.
    e. Ensures each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader or designated representative ensures platoon personnel are briefed on the air assault operation.
    a. Briefs locations of LZ, PZ, and rendezvous points.
    b. Briefs type of aircraft, if known.
    c. Briefs allowable cargo load of aircraft.
    d. Briefs priority of loading and bump plan.
      (1) Ensures bumped personnel (if any) are told to report to the straggler control point.
    e. Briefs contingency plan for downed aircraft (both for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the platoon).
    f. Briefs safety procedures.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.
 	
  9. The platoon conducts a rehearsal. (Include both loading, unloading the aircraft, as well as actions on the objective.)
 	
*10. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.
 	
 11. The platoon moves to the PZ and prepares for loading IAW the TSOP.
    a. Enters way points into position navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Secures their assigned portion of the PZ while waiting to load the aircraft.
c. Remains dispersed, covered, and concealed while awaiting the aircraft's arrival.
d. Approaches the aircraft from the front or the side only after the landing is completed.
e. Loads at the time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO.
f. Leaves security with vehicles as necessary.
 	
*12. The platoon leader enforces safety measures IAW the TSOP.
    a. Ensures weapons are on SAFE.
    b. Secures radio antennas.
    c. Secures hand grenades.
 	
13. The platoon dismounts the aircraft after it lands IAW the TSOP, or guidance.
    a. Confirms location of LZ with air crew.
    b. Ensures soldiers do not jump from a hovering helicopter until directed to do so by a member of the aircraft crew.
    c. Moves out about 20 meters from the side of the aircraft and assumes prone firing positions (facing outward).
      (1) Finds the closest covered and or concealed location.
      (2) Observes possible enemy activity or engages enemy, calls for fire, and so forth.
    d. Moves to the assigned positions to provide all-round security.
 	
14. The platoon evacuates casualties on departing aircraft if possible.
 	
15. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-1180	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP
07-3-1171	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Dismounted) (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP
07-3-1180	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Mounted) (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5054	Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (07-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR prevents the enemy from obtaining information about its operations and or intent. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR maintains operations security IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR denies information to the enemy by maintaining physical security, signal security, and information security. The OPFOR identifies and eliminates indicators that can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
SCOUT PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
60 MM MORTAR SECTION
RECON PLATOON HQ

TASK: Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1378)
(FM 100-17)   (FM 55-10)   (FM 55-15)
(FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is at a normal state of deployment readiness or is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and receives a warning order (WARNO) to prepare for and execute a deployment and or redeployment. The mobilization plan (MOBPLAN), movement plan, recall plan, security plan, unit access roster, load plans, and current maps are available. A unit movement officer (UMO) from higher headquarters is available to assist the platoon. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon performs deployment and or redeployment activities in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the guidance from higher headquarters. The platoon is prepared to move to the port of embarkation (POE) at the time specified in the operation order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using (SU) information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures, if applicable.
    a. Identifies tasks in the deployment/redeployment WARNO.
    b. Identifies all documented deployment/redeployment policies and procedures from the TSOP, deployment/redeployment plan, movement order, operation plan (OPLAN), and operation order (OPORD).
    c. Issues WARNO to platoon.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher headquarters (HQ).
    e. Identifies deployment/redeployment criteria required for platoon validation.
 	
* 3. The platoon leader reviews platoon readiness status.
    a. Reviews automated unit equipment list (AUEL).
    b. Reviews status of platoon loading plans and updates them, as necessary.
    c. Identifies equipment shortages based on the table of organization and equipment (TOE), mobilization table of organization and equipment (MTOE), and common table of allowance (CTA).
    d. Inventories unit basic load items.
    e. Identifies required items by each class of supply.
    f. Identifies unit training status and or requirements or qualifications for deployment or redeployment to include:
      (1) Individual or crew-served weapons.
      (2) Nuclear, biological, and chemical.
      (3) Hazardous material certified personnel, if required.
    g. Reviews personnel status. (Includes nondeployable personnel issues.)
    h. Identifies unit maintenance problems that affect readiness and initiates actions to resolve them, as required.
 	
* 4. The platoon leader supports the UMO.
    a. Updates the unit's deployment/redeployment movement plan and or MOBPLAN based on current mission guidance and timeline from the commander.
    b. Requests assistance from higher HQ, as required.
    c. Supervises packing and loading of platoon equipment and supplies IAW load plans.
    d. Updates his battle book, to include unit mission, organization, location of mobilization station (if required), redeployment ports information (if required), and extracts from applicable OPLAN.
    e. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.
    f. Assists the company safety officer in preparing a risk assessment of the deployment/redeployment operation.
    g. Assists the company executive officer in preparing briefings to dependants and updating family assistance plans.
    h. Requests assistance from company HQ to fill equipment shortages.
    i. Requests assistance from company HQ to fill personnel shortages.
    j. Submits rear detachment requirements, if any.
    k. Submits advance party personnel requirements based on the commander's guidance.
    l. Plans for property transfer, turnover, and control procedures.
    m. Submits names of platoon deployment/redeployment team members to higher HQ, if required.
    n. Consolidates all TOE, MTOE, CTA equipment, and basic loads of supplies at loading sites based on the commander's deployment/redeployment timelines.
    o. Ensures the platoon is prepared to meet deployment/redeployment validation criteria.
    p. Briefs personnel on media contact for deployment/redeployment.
    q. Briefs the platoon on deployment/redeployment and mission requirements.
    r. Briefs threat and ROE for the gaining theater, if appropriate.
    s. Briefs force protection measures for each step of the deployment/redeployment process, including assembly areas and marshalling areas, as applicable.
    t. Supervises the execution of the plan for storing equipment left behind, for		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
example, personal property and personally owned vehicles, as appropriate. u. Supervises preparation and movement to the POE/port of debarkation (POD). v. Updates TSOP.		
* 5. The platoon leader reports deployment/redeployment preparation progress IAW TSOP and guidance from higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
07-2-5054	Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Deployment/Redeployment Activities (07-OPFOR-1067)

CONDITION: The enemy has received notification of a deployment/redeployment.

STANDARD: Deployment/redeployment activities are disrupted or stopped by employing special operations personnel.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
ANTIARMOR SECTION
3 WEAPONS SQUADS
3 WEAPONS SQUAD
MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
ANTITANK SECTION HQ
3 ANTITANK TEAMS
RECON PLATOON
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
ANTIARMOR PLT HQ
ANTIARMOR SQUAD

TASK: Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment
(Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-1387)
(FM 100-17)   (DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R)   (FM 25-5)
(FM 55-15)   (FM 55-30)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon receives a movement order/directive to move to the railhead or aerial port of embarkation (POE) for deployment/redeployment. Routes, scheduled halts, and logistics and administrative support are available in accordance with (IAW) the movement plan. Higher headquarters (HQ) has an advanced party at the POE and the advance party has conducted a route reconnaissance. The convoy, serial, and march commanders have been designated as appropriate. Security for the move has been coordinated. The movement directive, movement plan, port call message, load plans, and strip maps are available. Preparation for movement is performed day or night under all environmental conditions. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prepares vehicles and equipment for deployment IAW the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon is ready to cross the start point (SP) no later than (NLT) the time specified in the movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using (SU) information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives a movement order or directive and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon.		
* 3. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.		
* 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant (PSG) ensures all personnel are present with necessary equipment.		
5. The platoon prepares vehicles and equipment for movement to railhead or aerial POE. a. Performs before-operations preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles and equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Corrects maintenance discrepancies within the operator's capabilities IAW applicable technical manual (TM). c. Reports all maintenance deficiencies beyond the operator's capability to the immediate supervisor. d. Corrects loading deficiencies IAW the loading plan, if necessary. e. Recomputes vehicle center of balance, if necessary (APOE only). f. Marks center of balance on vehicle, if necessary (APOE only). g. Marks vehicles for movement IAW Department of Defense (DD) 4500.9-R, FM 55-30, movement order, and or UMO's instructions. h. Places military shipping labels on vehicles and equipment IAW movement plan and UMO's instructions. i. Employs safety procedures. * 6. The platoon leader conducts pre-movement inspections. a. Inspects personnel and their equipment for compliance with movement directive, movement plan, and commander's instructions. b. Inspects organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability. c. Inspects vehicles, trailers, and loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security. d. Forwards personnel and equipment status to executive officer and or first sergeant. * 7. The platoon leader or PSG briefs commander on preparations for movement. * 8. The platoon prepares to convoy to POE. a. Provides vehicle position listing with location of all vehicles to the trail party leader. b. Opens radio nets as specified in the movement plan. 9. The platoon prepares to cross SP. a. Stages vehicles for convoy IAW convoy commander's instructions. b. Notifies convoy commander that vehicles are ready to cross SP for convoy to POE.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1378	Perform Deployment or Redeployment Activities (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1387	Prepare Vehicles and Equipment for Deployment or Redeployment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.

ELEMENTS: 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
RECON PLAT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
60 MM MORTAR SECTION
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR SECTION
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ

TASK: Take Action on Contact (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1432)

(FM 7-8)	(FM 34-2-1)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))
(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The platoon makes unexpected contact with the enemy. The platoon receives fires from enemy weapons, visually acquires the enemy, or makes contact with an enemy obstacle. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon takes action on contact in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, commander's guidance, and or the tactical situation. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

2. The platoon deploys and reports.
   a. Reacts when contact entails direct fire.
     (1) Returns fire immediately to destroy or suppress the enemy.
     (2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions, if available.
     (3) Closes hatches, if applicable.
     (4) Uses indirect fire assets, as necessary.
     (5) Activates on board self protection measures as appropriate.
     (6) Conducts battle drills, as necessary.
     (7) Maintains visual contact with the enemy while continuing to develop the situation through reconnaissance or surveillance.
     (8) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
other tactical means.		
b. Reacts to visual contact. (Element is in immediate danger.)		
(1) Initiates fires to destroy or suppress the enemy.		
(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.		
(3) Closes hatches, if applicable.		
(4) Activates onboard, self-protection measures as appropriate.		
(5) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(6) Conducts further actions as directed by the platoon leader.		
c. Reacts to visual contact. (Element is NOT in immediate danger.)		
(1) Deploys.		
(2) Maintains visual contact.		
(3) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(4) Conducts further actions as directed by the platoon leader.		
d. Reacts when contact is indirect fires (observed or receiving).		
(1) Uses evasive actions to avoid impact area.		
(2) Moves quickly to clear impact area.		
(3) Closes hatches, if applicable.		
(4) Reacts to chemical and or biological attack if necessary.		
(a) Immediately conducts nuclear, biological, and chemical reconnaissance as required.		
(5) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(6) Conducts further actions as directed by the platoon leader.		
e. Reacts when contact is with an obstacle.		
(1) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.		
(2) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(3) Calls for immediate smoke on the far side of the obstacle to conceal deployment of the platoon, if required.		
(4) Makes a recommendation to higher HQ (bypass or breach).		
(a) Bypasses, if possible.		
(b) Breaches, if required.		
f. Reacts to visual contact of enemy or unknown aircraft. (element is in immediate danger).		
(1) Initiates fires to destroy or cause aircraft to depart area.		
(2) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.		
(3) Closes hatches, if applicable.		
(4) Activates onboard, self-protection measures as appropriate.		
(5) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(6) Conducts further actions as directed by the platoon leader.		
g. Reacts to visual contact of enemy or unknown aircraft. (element is NOT in immediate danger).		
(1) Deploys to covered and concealed positions.		
(2) Maintains visual contact.		
(3) Maintains cross talk with all platoon elements using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
(4) Conducts further actions as directed by the platoon leader.		
3. The platoon complies with ROE and ROI.		
* 4. The platoon leader evaluates the situation.		
a. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Requests updated intelligence information.
b. Conducts reconnaissance to fully develop the situation.
c. Determines enemy size, composition, activity, orientation, and location of weapon systems.
d. Searches for antitank ditches, minefields, wire, or other obstacles that could define an engagement area.
e. Searches for the flanks of the enemy and any elements that could mutually support enemy positions.
 f. Analyzes squad spot reports (SPOTREPs) and other tactical information, as required, to make an assessment of the situation.
g. Sends updated SPOTREPs to higher HQ based on a fully developed situation using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
h. Directs the actions of elements not in contact in a manner that supports the elements in contact.
 i. Directs elements not in contact to continue the mission IAW the OPORD and or FRAGO.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader selects an appropriate course of action (COA) based on the commander's intent, the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC); his analysis of the situation; and input from elements in contact.
    a. Selects the original COA (as previously addressed in the OPORD) if it is consistent with the commander's intent and or concept and is within the platoon's capability.
       OR
    b. Issues FRAGO to refine the plan based on the situation, ensuring it supports the commander's intent.
    c. Recommends an alternative COA based on evaluation and development of the situation.
       (1) Sends recommendation to the commander using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
       (2) Directs the platoon to execute tactical movement (employing bounding overwatch and support by fire within the platoon) and reconnaissance by fire to further develop the situation.
        OR
       (3) Directs the platoon to establish a hasty defense or support by fire (SBF) position and requests further guidance from commander.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader uses cross talk with other platoons as necessary to obtain support (platoon leader or platoon sergeant [PSG]) using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader directs the platoon to execute the COA based on the situation or commander's order.
    a. Directs the platoon to destroy an inferior force.
       OR
    b. Directs platoon to conduct overwatch and or SBF.
       OR
    c. Directs platoon to conduct an attack by fire.
       OR
    d. Directs platoon to assault an enemy position.
       OR
    e. Directs platoon to break contact and conduct bypass operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
OR		
f. Directs platoon to conduct reconnaissance by fire.		
OR		
g. Directs platoon to conduct defense of a battle position.		
OR		
h. Directs platoon to breach an obstacle.		
* 9. The platoon leader or PSG keeps the commander informed throughout the operation.		
a. Sends updated SITREPs and or SPOTREPs as necessary.		
b. Reports completion of the operation.		
10. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		
11. The platoon handles enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), if applicable.		
12. The platoon treats and evacuates casualties, if applicable.		
13. The platoon processes captured documents and or equipment, if applicable.		
14. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1027	Breach an Obstacle (Infantry Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1045	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1252	Conduct Overwatch and or Support by Fire (Antiarmor/Infantry Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1270	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-4027	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5009	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Adjust Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3000)
(FM 7-90)   (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)
(DA FORM 2399-R)   (FM 23-91)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request to adjust final protective fire (FPF), which it has coordinated with the forward observer (FO) and the supported unit. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon adjusted the FPF within 16 minutes of fire request (8 minutes if equipped with the MFCS). The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding based on information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The FDC processed the request to adjust the FPF.		
a. [FDC present] Computed FPF data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds or, if equipped with MFCS, within 15 seconds.		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R). OR		
3. [FDC not present] The platoon leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with step 2.		
a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.		
b. Authenticated the fire request.		
Note: Computers do not add a safety factor when determining the initial target location.		
c. Specified the method of adjustment--one round either section left or right.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Said: "AT MY COMMAND."
 	
 4. The mortar unit fired an initial volley for sheaf adjustment.
    a. Performed one of the following:
       (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
 	
       (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    c. Fired section left or section right. Each unit fired 10 seconds apart IAW the initial fire command.
 	
 5. The mortar unit adjusted FPF.
    a. [Units designated by the FO] Performed one of the following:
       (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
       (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. [Units designated by the FO] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    c. Fired the final adjusting round within 16 minutes after receiving the target location.
    d. Recorded the last adjustment firing data as FPF data.
Note: [Live fire only] All final adjusting rounds impacted within 25 meters of their final FPF line.
 	
 6. The mortar unit was ready to fire FPF.
    a. [FDC] Recorded firing data separately for each mortar on the data sheet.
    b. Laid mortars on the FPF firing data when not firing another mission.
    c. Prepared the specified number of rounds and set them aside for the FPF.
    d. [At least one crewmember] Operated the mortar continuously to initiate FPF.
    e. Knew the code word to fire the FPF.
 	
 7. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire a Direct Alignment (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3018)
    (<u>FM 7-90</u>)   (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (FM 23-91)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon has received the order to engage a target. Observers can watch both the target and the squad's mortar position from an observation post (OP). The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including; communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces and noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated an accurate fire for effect (FFE) within 7 minutes of the fire request or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 4 minutes. The platoon engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The subordinate element adjusted fire onto the target.
    a. [Leader] Determined the distance from the firing position to the target and determined charge and elevation.
    b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    c. Fired initial round within 2 minutes after the squad leader occupied the OP and the gunner identified the target or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
    d. [Gunner] Fired each adjusting round within 40 seconds after impact of the previous round.
    e. Fired no more than three adjusting rounds.
 	
2. The subordinate element fired for effect.
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Initiated fire for effect within 7 minutes after the subordinate element leader sighted on the target or, if the element has MFCS, within 4 minutes.
Note: [Live fire only] For the FFE to be effective, 75 percent of the rounds fired had to impact within two circles, one with a radius of 50 meters, and the other with a radius of 100 meters. The fractions are rounded down. For example, 75 percent of 3 rounds equals 2.5 rounds, which he rounded down to 2.
 	
3. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leader reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or targets.
 	
4. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-074-0012	Conduct Occupation of a Mortar Firing Position by a Squad	CMF 11 (INFANTRY) STP 7-11C14-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR SECTION
                 MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                 FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                 60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire a Final Protective Fire (Mortar Platoon) (07-3-3027)
      (<u>ARTEP 7-90-DRILL</u>)   (FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position, and it has received a request to fire final protective fire (FPF). The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated accurate FPF within 30 seconds (if already laid on FPF), or within 1 minute (if not already laid on FPF). The unit destroyed, suppressed, degraded, disrupted, or forced the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2); the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.
 	
  2. The fire-direction center (FDC) processed the call for FPF.
      a. Required forward observer (FO) to authenticate.
      b. Transmitted designated code word to all mortar units.
 	
  3. The mortar unit fired FPF (already laid on the FPF).
      a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
      b. Began firing FPF within 30 seconds after receipt of the FPF request.
      c. Continued firing until unit received end-of-mission order or until they expended the ammunition.
 	
  4. The mortar unit fired FPF (not already laid on the FPF).
      a. Performed one of the following:
          (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection."
          (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection and Elevation Change."
      b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
      c. Began firing FPF within 1 minute after receipt of FPF request.
Note: [Live fire only] All rounds impacted within 25 meters of the FPF.
 	
  5. At the end of the mission, subordinate element leaders reported the number of		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or targets.		
6. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire a Hipshoot (Adjust Fire) (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3036)
(<u>FM 7-90</u>)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon has received a request to adjust fire while moving. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated an accurate fire for effect (FFE) within 11 minutes after receiving the fire request or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 3 minutes and 30 seconds. The unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		

Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.

2. The mortar unit occupied the firing position.		
3. Element(s) performed Crew Drill 1, "Place Mortar Into Action." If equipped with MFCS, base gun emplaced first, followed by the remaining guns, which were positioned on the flanks of the base guns in their correct positions.		

Note: If MFCS equipped, base gun emplaced first to ensure that all guns were relatively on line in the direction of fire. This was required, because the MFCS does not permit one gun to fire over another.

4. The FDC prepared the mortar unit to fire.		

Note: FBCB2 provides standardized reports that streamline the reporting process, but do not eliminate the requirement for FM voice message traffic. Contact reports initiate battle drills and cue leaders to refer to their FBCB2 screens for updated information.

a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes after receiving the last element of the call for fire. See task "Process Call for Fire."		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds.		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
       OR
    e. [FDC not present; fire request authenticated] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command and determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target in accordance with steps 4a through 4d.
    f. Unit leader determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--
      (1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
      (2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
      (3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
      (4) The required ammunition was available.
      (5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
      (6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars were 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
    g. Element(s) performed reciprocal lay:
      (1) Crew Drill 2, "Reciprocal Lay With Aiming Circle."
      (2) Crew Drill 3, "Reciprocal Lay Using the Mortar Sight."
      (3) Crew Drill 4, "Reciprocal Lay With M2 Compass."
 	
5. The adjusting mortar element fired initial adjusting round.
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Fired initial adjusting round within 4 minutes (day) or 5 minutes (night) after receipt of the target location. If equipped with MFCS, fired initial adjusting round within 1 minute and 30 seconds (day); or 2 minutes and 30 seconds (night) after receipt of the target location.
 	
6. The mortar unit completed its lay.
    a. [Adjusting mortar gunner] Indexed the referred deflection to an accuracy of zero mils.
    b. [Adjusting mortar ammunition bearer] Emplaced aiming posts along the referred deflection.
      (1) Emplaced far aiming post first, about 100 meters from the mortar, terrain permitting.
      (2) Emplaced near aiming post second, about 50 meters from the mortar, terrain permitting.
    c. Obtained correct, aligned sight picture.
    d. [Nonadjusting elements] Performed Crew Drill 2, "Reciprocal Lay With Aiming Circle," Crew Drill 3, "Reciprocal Lay Using Mortar Sight," or Crew Drill 4, "Reciprocal Lay With M2 Compass."
 	
7. The mortar unit adjusted onto target.
    a. [Elements] Performed one of the following:
      (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
      (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. [Adjusting element] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
 	
8. The mortar unit conducted fire for effect (FFE).
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Initiated FFE within 11 minutes after receipt of the target location.
    c. [Live fire only] Engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius.
Note: For the FFE to be effective, 75 percent of the rounds fired had to impact within a 50-meter radius. Fractions were rounded down, for example, 75 percent of 3		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
rounds equals 2.5 rounds, which rounds down to 2.		
9. Subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of rounds on enemy personnel or target, if known, at end of mission.		
10. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC

TASK: Fire a Hipshoot (Immediate Suppression/Smoke) (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3045)
(FM 7-90)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon has received an immediate request for smoke or suppressive fire while moving. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated fire for effect (FFE) within 4 minutes after receiving fire request or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 3 minutes and 30 seconds. The unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The mortar unit occupied the firing position.		
2. Element(s) performed Battle Drill 5, "Perform Hasty Lay." Note: Mortar unit may substitute alternative techniques for laying mortars, as long as the unit meets the FFE time and the accuracy standards.		

3. The mortar unit prepared initial fire command.
Note: FBCB2 provides standardized reports such as call for fire and check fire. Using these reports streamlines the reporting process, but does not eliminate the requirement for FM voice-message traffic. Contact reports initiate battle drills and cue leaders to refer to their FBCB2 screens for updated information.
    a. FDC determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 15 seconds.
    b. FDC recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
    c. FDC kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
      OR		

4. [FDC not present] Unit leader determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--
    a. The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
    b. The target did not endanger friendly troops.
    c. The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
    d. The required ammunition was available.
    e. The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
    f. Special permission was required and if necessary, leader requested permission to fire the mission from the Fire-Support Officer (FSO).
Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Unit leader determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target, and prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2c. Fire request was authenticated.		
6. FDC received the call for fire. a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds. See "Process Call for Fire."		

7. The mortar unit conducted FFE.
    a. Element(s) performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Element initiated FFE within 4 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 3 minutes and 30 seconds.
    c. [Live fire only] Unit engaged enemy or target within the bursting radius.
Note: For the FFE to be effective, 75 percent of the rounds fired had to impact within two circles, one with a radius of 50 meters, and the other with a radius of 100 meters. Fractions were rounded down, for example, 75 percent of 3 rounds equal 2.5 rounds, which rounds down to 2.
    d. At end of mission, subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of rounds on enemy personnel or target, if known.		

8. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
                MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Adjust Fire (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3054)
    (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
    (FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon's fire-direction center (FDC) is in a firing position and has received a request to adjust fire. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated an accurate fire for effect (FFE) within 7 minutes after receiving fire request or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 4 minutes. The platoon engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius and complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		

2. The FDC processed the adjust-fire request.
     a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
     b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
     c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
     d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
     OR		

3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.
     a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.
     b. Authenticated the fire request.
     c. Determined if the section can accept the fire mission by verifying that--
         (1) The target was located in the element's area of responsibility.
         (2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
         (3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(4) The required ammunition was available.
(5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
(6) Leader cleared the fire-support request (FR) in accordance with (IAW) unit tactical standing operation procedures (TSOP).
Note: The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
4. The mortar element adjusted fire.
    a. Performed one of the following:
      (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
      (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. [Base element] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    c. [Base element] Fired initial adjusting round within 2 minutes after receipt of the target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
    d. [Base element] Fired subsequent adjusting rounds within 1 minute after impact of the previous round or, if equipped with MFCS, within 15 seconds.
 	
5. The mortar element conducted fire for effect (FFE).
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Initiated FFE within 5 minutes after receipt of the target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 3 minutes.
Note: The element engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius.
 	
6. At the end of the mission, subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s).
 	
7. When not firing another mission, gunners laid the mortars using final protective fire data or the designated priority target data.
 	
8. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Coordinated Illumination (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3063)
(<u>ARTEP 7-90-DRILL</u>)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:				T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is conducting operations as part of a larger force. The platoon has already fulfilled a request for coordinated illumination, and it has received a request for high-explosive fire (HE) at a specified time. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces, noncombatants, no-fire areas, or a combination of these. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon placed the point of burst to give the most effective illumination on the target, and so that the final travel of the flare was not between the forward observer (FO) and target. When fire for effect (FFE) impacted, the platoon illuminated the target area. The FFE occurred within 7 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 4 minutes. The mortar elements engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The FDC prepared the mortar unit to fire the coordinated illumination mission.		
a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).		
e. Used a new computer record.		
3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.		
a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.		
b. Authenticated the fire request.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--
   (1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
   (2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
   (3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
   (4) The required ammunition was available.
   (5) Special permission was required, and if necessary, the leader requested permission from the fire-support officer (FSO) to fire the mission.
 Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
 4. The mortar unit coordinated the illumination and HE.
   a. Performed one of the following:
     (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
     (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
   b. [Element to fire illumination] On order of FDC, performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
   c. [FDC] Began timing when element fired illumination round.
   d. [FDC] Stopped timing and, when FO called back, "Illumination mark," recorded the time on the computer's record.
 Note: Computer compares the HE round's time of flight with the illumination mark time, and subtracts the smaller from the larger. The difference is the amount of time that separates the firing of each illumination and HE round.
   e. [HE-adjusting element] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
   f. Fired initial adjusting HE round within 4 minutes after receipt of the target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
   g. [Live fire only] When the adjusting HE impacted, illuminated the target area.
 	
 5. The mortar unit conducted FFE using live-fire standards.
   a. Illuminated the target area when HE impacted in FFE.
   b. Entered FFE within 7 minutes after receiving the target location.
   c. Engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius.
 Note: For the FFE to be effective, 75 percent of the rounds fired had to impact within this circle. Fractions were rounded down, for example, 75 percent of 3 rounds equals 2.5 rounds, which rounds down to 2.
 	
 6. At the end of the mission, subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s), if known.
 	
 7. When not firing another mission, gunners laid the mortars using FPF data or designated priority target data.
 	
 8. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire for Effect (Mortar Platoon) (07-3-3072)
(ARTEP 7-90-DRILL) (DA FORM 2188-R) (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91) (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request to fire for effect, without adjusting on a target within the transfer limits of the registration point. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated an accurate FFE within 4 minutes of fire request or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 3 minutes and 30 seconds. The unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.
 Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.
 	
 2. The FDC processed the FFE request.
    a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
    b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
    c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
    d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
       OR
 	
 3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.
    a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.
    b. Cleared the fire-support request (FR) in accordance with (IAW) unit tactical standing operation procedures (TSOP).
 	
 4. The mortar unit conducted FFE.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Performed one of the following: (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth." (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change." b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire." c. Initiated FFE within 4 minutes after receipt of the target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 3 minutes. 5. [Live fire only] The element engaged the enemy or point target within the bursting radius. Impact plotters made a target circle by constructing two concentric rings, one with a radius of 50 meters (for the section), and one with a radius of 100 meters (for the platoon). The plotters placed the concentric rings wherever the area between them (the actual target "circle") would hold the most FFE rounds. Then, for effective FFE, at least 75 percent of the rounds fired impacted on or between the rings. Note: For example, if 3 rounds are fired, then 3 times 0.75 (75 percent) equals 2.5, which rounds down to 2. Therefore, 2 out of 3 rounds fired must impact within the target circle (the area between the two rings). 6. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s). 7. When not firing another mission, gunners laid the mortars using final protective fire data or designated priority target data. 8. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                        FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                        MORTAR SECTION
                        60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Illumination (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3081)
            (<u>FM 7-90</u>)   (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)
            (DA FORM 2399-R)   (FM 23-91)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request for battlefield illumination. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon illuminated the target within 10 minutes after receiving the request for illumination or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 6 minutes. The platoon maintained maximum illumination continuously for the period requested. Adjusted correctly to ensure that illumination flare burned out slowly before it reached the ground. All forward observer(s) (FOs) could see the target with the illumination provided by the mortar platoon. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.
 Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.
 	
 2. The FDC prepared to conduct the illumination mission.
      a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
      b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
      c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
      d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
      OR
 	
 3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.
      a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.
      b. Authenticated the fire request.
      c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--
         (1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
 (3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
 (4) The required ammunition was available.
 (5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
 (6) Special permission was required, and if necessary, the leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
 Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
 Note: Vertical interval, charge correction, angle "T," and deflection correction were not used to compute firing data.
 	
 4. FDC used the firing table to determine the time of flight corrections, corrections for elevation, and range to impact.
 	
 5. The mortar unit adjusted illumination over the target.
     a. Performed one of the following:
        (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
        (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
     b. [Designated elements] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
     c. Fired initial adjusting illumination round within 2 minutes after receipt of fire command from FDC (no MFCS) or 1 minute and 30 seconds (MFCS).
 Note: All corrections to move the round up or down related to the height of burst. Adjustments to the height of the burst were then applied to the base charge and fuze setting.
 	
 6. The mortar unit illuminated the target.
     a. [Designated elements] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
     b. Illuminated target within 10 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 6 minutes.
 Note: [Live fire only] Unit maintained illumination for the entire period requested. Forward observers (FOs) were able to see the target with illumination.
 	
 7. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended.
 	
 8. When not firing another fire mission, the gunners laid mortars using final protective fire data or designated priority target data.
 	
 9. The platoon complied with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
               MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
               FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
               MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Immediate Suppression/Smoke (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3090)
      (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
      (FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request for immediate smoke and suppressive fire. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated effective fire for effect (FFE) within 4 minutes of fire request or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 3 minutes and 30 seconds. The mortar unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI. Some iterations of this task should be conducted in limited visibility conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The fire-direction center (FDC) prepared to conduct the immediate suppression or smoke mission.		
a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds.		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).		
OR		
3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a to 2d.		
a. Determines the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.		
b. Authenticates the fire request.		
c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--		
(1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
(3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
(4) The required ammunition was available.
(5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
(6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, the leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
Note: [Section only] The interval between mortars is 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
4. Performed one of the following:
    a. Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
    b. Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
 	
5. The mortar unit conducted FFE.
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Fired the initial volley within 3 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
    c. [Smoke mission only] Fired a parallel sheaf, with each mortar firing one or two rounds of smoke.
 	
6. [Live fire only] All rounds impacted within 100 meters of the target.
 	
7. The mortar unit adjusted onto the target.
    a. Performed one of the following:
        (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
        (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire" by firing a one-round volley for each adjustment.
 	
8. The mortar unit conducted FFE following the adjustment.
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. [Live fire only] Initiated FFE within 4 minutes of request to adjust fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 3 minutes and 30 seconds.
    c. [Live fire only] Engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius.
 	
9. [Live fire only] The element engaged the enemy or point target within the bursting radius. Impact plotters made a target circle by constructing two concentric rings, one with a radius of 50 meters (for the section), and one with a radius of 100 meters (for the platoon). The plotters placed the concentric rings wherever the area between them (the actual target "circle") would hold the most FFE rounds. Then, for effective FFE, at least 75 percent of the rounds fired impacted on or between the rings.
 	
10. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s), if known.
 	
11. When not firing another fire mission, gunners laid the mortars using final protective fire data or the designated priority target data.
 	
12. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Priority Target (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3099)
<u>(ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)</u>   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)   (GTA 07-01-017)
(TASC-303-TAD110)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position, and has received a request to engage a priority target that is located within the transfer limits of a registration point. The fire-direction center (FDC) has computed and provided the firing data. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated accurate fire for effect (FFE) on the priority target within 1 minute (if already laid on it) or 2 minutes (if not already laid on it). The unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The FDC processed the call for fire.		
a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds. (See the task "Process Call for Fire.")		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).		
OR		
3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.		
a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.		
b. Authenticated the fire request.		
c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
(2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
(3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
(4) The required ammunition was available.
(5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
(6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, the leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
 	
Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
4. The mortar element engaged the priority target (section was already laid on the requested priority target).
  a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
  b. Initiated FFE within 1 minute after receiving the call for fire (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
 	
5. The mortar element engaged the priority target (unit not laid on the requested priority target).
  a. Performed one of the following:
    (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
    (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
  b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
  c. Initiated FFE within 2 minutes after receipt of the call for fire (no MFCS) or 1 minute and 30 seconds (MFCS).
 	
6. [Live fire only] The element engaged the enemy or point target within the bursting radius. Impact plotters made a target circle by constructing two concentric rings, one with a radius of 50 meters (for the section), and one with a radius of 100 meters (for the platoon). The plotters placed the concentric rings wherever the area between them (the actual target "circle") would hold the most FFE rounds. Then, for effective FFE, at least 75 percent of the rounds fired impacted on or between the rings.
 	
7. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s), if known.
 	
8. When not firing another fire mission, gunners laid mortars using final protective fire data or the designated priority target data.
 	
9. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Quick Smoke (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3108)
(<u>ARTEP 7-90-DRILL</u>)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request for quick smoke. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon fired an initial adjusting round within 3 minutes after receiving the target location or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 1 minute and 30 seconds. The platoon maintained a smoke screen for the prescribed period in the requested location or IAW the commander's guidance. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.
 Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.
 	
 2. The FDC prepared to conduct the smoke mission.
     a. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
     b. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
     c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
     d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
     OR
 	
 3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.
     a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.
     b. Authenticated the fire request.
     c. Determined if the section can accept the fire mission by verifying that--
        (1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
        (2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
(4) The required ammunition was available.
(5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
(6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, the leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
4. The FDC obtained approval to fire a quick-smoke mission from the highest unit commander affected.
 	
5. If the mission was planned in advance, the FDC estimated the ammunition based on the most unfavorable conditions the unit might expect at the time and place to fire.
 	
6. If the mission was to cause casualties, then the unit mixed white phosphorous (WP) with high-explosive (HE) rounds. If the mission was to cause blinding effects, then the unit fired directly on the target.
 	
7. The mortar unit adjusted fire.
    a. Performed one of the following:
        (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
        (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. [Upwind flank mortar element] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    c. Fired initial adjusting round within 3 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds.
    d. Adjusted HE.
    e. Fired subsequent adjusting rounds within 1 minute (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS) after gunner repeated the last digit of the elevation element.
     f. [After the final adjustment round] Fired one smoke round to see if it hit the right spot.
 	
8. FDC adjusted fire.
    a. Recomputed firing data for each sheaf-adjusting mortar to open sheaf.
    b. Transmitted fire command to sheaf-adjusting mortars IAW FO's order to FIRE SECTION RIGHT or FIRE SECTION LEFT.
    c. If a normal parallel sheaf would not cover the area to be screened, directed the mortar unit to open sheaf.
 	
9. Unit changed the lay of sheaf-adjusting mortars.
    a. Performed one of the following:
        (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
        (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
 	
10. Sheaf-adjusting elements--
    a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
    b. Fired to confirm open sheaf within 2 minutes after smoke round confirms final adjustment of adjusting mortar (no MFCS) or 1 minute (MFCS).
 	
11. The mortar unit established a smoke screen.
    a. [Sheaf-adjusting elements] Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Fired 2 minutes of rounds in fire for effect (FFE) volley fire.
c. Fired as quickly as possible, within safety constraints.
d. Fired all rounds to establish smoke screen within 2 minutes after achieving desired (parallel or open) sheaf (no MFCS) or 1 minute (MFCS).
Note: [Live fire only] The sheaf covered the entire area to be screened. If mission is planned, the unit established the screen at the specified time.
 	
12. The mortar unit maintained the smoke screen.
    a. Fired the prescribed number of rounds each minute.
    b. Maintained the screen for the prescribed number of minutes in accordance with one or more of the following:
        (1) IAW coordinated time schedule.
        (2) On order of the commander, who requested that the unit establish a smoke screen.
    c. In the absence of any external control, [FDC] controlled the timing by ordering the unit to cease fire.
 	
13. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended.
 	
14. When not firing another mission, the gunners laid the mortars using final protective fire data or designated priority target data.
 	
15. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                60MM MORTAR SECTION
                MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Simultaneous Missions (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3117)
   (<u>FM 7-90</u>)   (ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (FM 23-91)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received two requests to adjust fire, one right after the other. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon engaged both targets with accurate fire for effect (FFE) within 7 minutes after receipt of target location or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 3 minutes. The platoon engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources. Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The FDC prepared to conduct the two fire missions.		
3. Mortar unit leader assigned one or two computers for each mission.		

4. Upon receiving the call for fire, the FDC determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds. (See task "Process Call for Fire.")
   a. Determined all subsequent corrections within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).
   b. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
   c. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
   d. Ensured that the mortars firing on different targets did not cross-fire.		

5. [FDC not present] The mortar unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 4a through 4d.
   a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.
   b. Authenticated the fire request.
   c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) The target was in the mortar unit's area of responsibility.
 (2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
 (3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
 (4) The required ammunition was available.
 (5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
 (6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, the leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
 Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm mortars, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
 6. The mortar unit adjusted fire onto the two targets.
     a. Performed one of the following:
       (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
       (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
     b. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire" (adjustment of mortars).
     c. Fired initial adjusting rounds for both missions within 3 minutes after receipt of the second target location or, if equipped with MFCS, within 2 minutes and 30 seconds.
     d. [Nonadjusting element] Followed the fire commands for the adjusting mortar with which it would fire the FFE.
 	
 7. The mortar unit engaged the two targets with FFE.
     a. Performed Crew Drill 10, "Load and Fire."
     b. Initiated FFE for both missions within 7 minutes after receipt of the second target location or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 4 minutes.
     c. [Live fire only] Engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius.
 	
 8. Subordinate element leader reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target(s), if known, at the end of the mission.
 	
 9. When not firing another mission, gunners laid mortars using final protective fires (FPF) data or designated priority target data.
 	
 10. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Fire Time on Target (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3126)
(ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 6-20)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position. The platoon has received a request for a time-on-target (TOT) mission of at least 5 seconds, with emphasis on round impact. The platoon has registration data and a target within the transfer limits of the registration point. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon initiated accurate fire for effect (FFE) within 5 seconds of the requested TOT. The unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC.		
2. The mortar element prepared to fire a TOT mission with FDC present.		
a. [FDC] Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds, with emphasis on the rounds' impact. See task "Process Call for Fire."		
b. Determined all subsequent corrections, if any, within 30 seconds (no MFCS) or 15 seconds (MFCS).		
c. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R). OR		
3. [FDC not present] The unit leader prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.		
a. Determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target.		
b. Authenticated the fire request.		
c. Determined if the section could accept the fire mission by verifying that--		
(1) The target was in the unit's area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) The target did not endanger friendly troops.
(3) The fire mission supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
(4) The required ammunition was available.
(5) The target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
(6) Special permission was required and, if necessary, leader requested permission to fire the mission from the fire-support officer (FSO).
Note: [Section only] The intervals between mortars are 35 to 45 meters for 81-mm mortars, 25 to 30 meters for 60-mm mortars, and 60 meters for 120-mm mortars (60 meters distance between positions not required with MFCS), terrain permitting.
 	
  4. The FDC determined the time of flight of the round, and subtracted this time from the TOT.
     a. Gave elements the FFE standby time and FFE time.
     b. Performed one of the following:
       (1) Crew Drill 8, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth."
       (2) Crew Drill 9, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
     c. Prepared rounds IAW fire command.
     d. Informed elements to stand by at FFE standby time.
     e. Conducted countdown at least 1 minute before firing, in 10-second intervals.
 	
  5. The mortar unit conducted FFE.
 	
  6. The FDC ordered the elements to fire.
 	
  7. [Live fire only] The element engaged the enemy or point target in the bursting radius within 5 seconds of the scheduled TOT. Impact plotters made a target circle by constructing two concentric rings, one with a radius of 50 meters (for the section), and one with a radius of 100 meters (for the platoon). The plotters placed the concentric rings wherever the area between them (the actual target "circle") would hold the most FFE rounds. Then, for effective FFE, at least 75 percent of the rounds fired impacted on or between the rings.
 	
  8. At the end of the mission, the subordinate element leaders reported the number of rounds expended and the effects of the rounds on enemy personnel or target, if known.
 	
  9. When not firing another fire mission, gunners laid mortars based on final protective-fire data or the designated priority target data.
 	
10. The unit complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Register and Adjust a Parallel Sheaf (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-3135)
(ARTEP 7-90-DRILL)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
(FM 23-91)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon is in a firing position and has received a request to conduct a registration mission. The platoon has a current meteorological message; all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility.

 Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon registered, adjusted its parallel sheaf, and applied all corrections to mortars and firing data within 12 minutes (without the Mortar Fire-Control System [MFCS]) or within 4 minutes (with MFCS). The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The forward observer (FO) or fire-direction center (FDC) selected a registration point that was easily identifiable on the ground and on the map. It was also a fixed point and was relatively permanent.		

2. The FDC prepared to conduct the registration mission.
   a. Constructed firing charts using FDC computers.
   b. Determined the initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes after the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), 1 minute and 30 seconds.
   c. Determined all subsequent corrections, if any, within 30 seconds (without MFCS) or 15 seconds (with MFCS).
   d. Recorded all firing data on computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).
   e. Kept the data sheet current (DA Form 2188-R).
Note: [FDC not present] The element leader determined the direction and distance from the firing position to the target, and prepared the initial fire command in accordance with steps 2a through 2d.		

3. Base mortar element registered. Registration was complete when the final adjusting round impacted within 25 meters of the registration point.
   a. Performed one of the following:
     (1) Battle drill, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth Change."
     (2) Battle drill, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
   b. Performed drill "Load and Fire."
   c. Computed, but if adjusting round, impacted less than 50 meters from the registration point, did not fire the correction.
   d. Fired the final adjusting round within 8 minutes after receiving the target location.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The FDC prepared to adjust the parallel sheaf.
Note: All MFCS-equipped units should skip to step 7c.
    a. Initiated message to the observer to prepare to adjust the sheaf.
    b. Transmitted the fire command to sheaf-adjusting mortars IAW FO's order to FIRE SECTION RIGHT or FIRE SECTION LEFT.
 	
5. Sheaf-adjusting element adjusted.
    a. Performed one of the following:
       (1) Battle drill, "Lay for Small Deflection/Azimuth Change."
       (2) Battle drill, "Lay for Large Deflection/Azimuth and Elevation Change."
    b. Performed battle drill, "Load and Fire."
    c. Fired at 10-second intervals.
Note: Base element should fire only if requested by the FO.
 	
6. If the angle "T" was between 500 and 2700 mils, then the mortar element adjusted the parallel sheaf, first as "coverage," then opened to parallel.
    a. Refired corrections of 50 meters or more.
    b. Fired last sheaf-adjusting round within 4 minutes after firing the first sheaf-adjusting round or, if equipped with the MFCS, within 2 minutes and 30 seconds .
Note: [Live fire only] Sheaf was parallel when the distances between the last adjusting rounds of the mortars equaled the distances between the mortars themselves.
 	
7. The mortar element realigned the aiming posts and revised the firing data.
    a. Referred each sheaf-adjusting mortar to the deflection of the base mortar to within 0 mils.
    b. [Sheaf-adjusting elements] Realigned aiming posts (following the FO's correction to the last sheaf-adjusting round) within 75 seconds (day) or 120 seconds (night). If equipped with MFCS, did so within 60 seconds (day) or 90 seconds (night).
    c. Realigned aiming posts within plus or minus 1 mil of the referred deflection.
    d. [FDC computers] Applied registration corrections to existing targets within the transfer limits of the registration point (within 400 mils left or right of registration point; within 1,500 meters above or below the registration point).
 	
8. Using the FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means, the leader reported completion of the registration mission to the commander.
 	
9. When not firing another fire mission, gunners laid mortars using final protective fire data or the designated priority target data.
 	
10. The unit complied with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
07-3-5090	Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)	ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
                MORTAR PLATOON HQS
                ANTIARMOR SECTION
                3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
                3 WEAPONS SQUADS
                RECON PLAT HQS
                3 WEAPONS SQUAD
                RECON PLATOON HQ
                MORTAR PLATOON HQ
                3 RIFLE PLT HQ
                ANTITANK SECTION HQ
                3 ANTITANK TEAMS
                RECON PLATOON
                MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                MORTAR SECTION
                SCOUT PLT HQ
                HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
                BN MORTAR PLT HQ
                ANTIARMOR PLT HQ
                ANTIARMOR SQUAD
                THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Employ Protective Obstacle(s) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-1315)

(FM 20-32)	(DA FORM 1355-1-R)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting defensive operations as part of a higher headquarters and is required to employ hasty protective obstacles to prevent surprise and give early warning of enemy advance. Approval and a not later than (NLT) time for employment (minefields) has been received from the company commander. The platoon has indirect fire support available. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon employs hasty protective obstacles in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. Obstacles are integrated with direct and indirect fires, tied-in with existing obstacles, constructed in depth, employed for surprise, and support the tactical plan. The platoon reports, records, and tracks protective obstacles as required. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding (SU) using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 2. The platoon leader disseminates updated digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to squads.		
* 3. The platoon leader submits the intention to emplace obstacles, if required by the higher commander. Note: If protective obstacle is a minefield, company commander approval must be obtained.		

* 4. The platoon leader plans for protective obstacles using troop-leading procedures.
Note: If time is available for the employment of deliberate protective obstacles, engineer expertise and equipment may be required.
     a. Reconnoiters the terrain in front of the platoon position.
     b. Analyzes the mission.
     c. Analyzes the avenues of approach.
     d. Analyzes engagement area, battle positions, and location of weapons systems.
     e. Determines possible obstacle locations and types, if not directed from higher headquarters.
     f. Determines obstacle priorities.
     g. Determines resources available and necessary.
     h. Determines actual work sequence and time required.
     i. Determines task organization.
     j. Determines coordination required. (Engineer expertise and equipment may be required.)
     k. Plans for deception with possible phony minefields.
     l. Identifies mobility requirements.
Note: These requirements generally dictate that the platoon leave lanes or gaps in obstacles to allow patrols to enter and leave the position, counterattack and or reaction forces to move through the position, and logistic and support traffic to enter and leave the position.		

* 5. The platoon leader implements the plan.
     a. Ensures obstacles support the tactical plan.
     b. Ensures obstacles are covered by observation and fire.
     c. Ensures obstacles tie-in with and support the flank units, existing obstacles, and fire plans (indirect and direct).
     d. Ensures obstacles are deployed in depth.
     e. Employs obstacles for surprise.
     f. Positions obstacles outside hand grenade range.
     g. Employs obstacles by priority IAW OPORD.
     h. Coordinates obstacle locations with adjacent platoons using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 6. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI. a. Assigns obstacle emplacement tasks to the squads (by sector or as a task throughout the platoon area).		

7. The squads emplace the obstacles.
     a. Construct and emplace the obstacles.
     b. Maintain security during construction.
     c. Camouflage the obstacles.
     d. Mark the obstacle, if a minefield.
     e. Record and track minefields on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355 or 1355-1-R, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Report initiation, progress, and completion to the platoon leader as required.		

* 8. The platoon leader reports emplacement of obstacles to higher headquarters orally, electronically, or in written communications using the format specified by the local command.
    a. Reports progress, as required
    b. Reports completion of obstacles followed by a completed DA Form 1355 or DA Form 1355-1-R.
Note: Any modular pack mine system (MOPMS) minefield used as part of an obstacle plan must be reported as a scatterable minefield (SCATMINE).		

9. The platoon recovers obstacles, if required.
    a. Recovers obstacles with the same personnel who emplaced them.
    b. Disarms and recovers mines beginning with the row nearest the friendly side, if the protective obstacle is a minefield.
Note: Once MOPMS are dispensed, they cannot be recovered or reused. Their self-destruct time can be reset three times, for a total self-destruction time of 12 hours. They can also be command detonated.
    c. Ensures the security force remains with the recovery team until all obstacles are recovered.		

*10. The platoon leader reports the removal of obstacles to the higher commander.		

*11. The platoon leader transfers the responsibility of obstacles, as required.
    a. Ensures the leader of the gaining unit (as applicable) signs an obstacle turnover/transfer report. See FM 3-24.32 (20-32) for an example.
    b. Forwards a copy of the signed report, DA Form 1355 or DA Form 1355-1-R, to the higher commander.		

12. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-3032	Direct Installation/Removal of a Hasty Protective Minefield	CMF 11 (INFANTRY) STP 7-11B24-SM-TG
052-193-1003	Prime Explosives Nonelectrically	CMF 11 (INFANTRY) STP 7-11B24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-2063	Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5054	Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-2000	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2009	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-3009	Employ Fire Support (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Obstacle Breach (07-OPFOR-0026)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is on the offense and encounters a minefield or other obstacle that it cannot bypass. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the breach IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR engineers conduct reconnaissance of the obstacle and the combined arms unit breaches the obstacle.Note: The movement support detachment has the task of mine clearing during the march.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLATOON HQ
 3 RECON SQUADS
 RECON PLT HQS
 MORTAR PLATOON HQS
 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
 RECON PLAT HQS
 3 WEAPONS SQUAD
 3 WEAPONS SQUADS
 MORTAR PLATOON HQ
 3 RIFLE PLT HQ
 ANTITANK SECTION HQ
 3 ANTITANK TEAMS
 RECON PLATOON
 MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
 MORTAR SECTION
 SCOUT PLT HQ
 HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
 9 RIFLE SQUADS
 BN MORTAR PLT HQ
 THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
 60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft
(Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6000)

(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) that specifies weapons control status. The platoon is alerted that hostile aircraft are approaching their position or the platoon is receiving fire from hostile aircraft. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts active combined arms air defense measures in accordance with (IAW) the standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. All platoon personnel, without order or signal, fire and destroy attacking aircraft or force them away from friendly positions. All personnel use the engagement technique ordered by the platoon leader or specified in the TSOP. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI and weapons control status.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
2. The platoon personnel search for and visually identify approaching enemy		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
aircraft. Note: Personnel can use the HORIZONTAL SEARCH METHOD. (Search the horizon by moving the eyes in short movements across the sky, working up and across. Continue the searching and search pattern below the horizon to detect air platforms contour flying.) Personnel can use the VERTICAL SEARCH METHOD. (Search the sky using the horizon as a starting point and prominent terrain features as reference points. Move the eyes in short movements up the sky, then back down, continuing the movement across the terrain. Search in the same pattern below the horizon to detect air platforms contour flying.) Personnel can use a COMBINATION OF THE TWO METHODS. 3. The platoon personnel employ preparatory measures before engaging enemy aircraft. 　　a. Sound audible air attack alarm to alert all personnel of the presence of enemy aircraft using one or more of the following: 　　　　(1) Use unbroken warbling siren for 1 minute duration. 　　　　(2) Use succession of long blasts on vehicle horns, whistles, bugles, or other wind instruments in a ratio of 3 to 1; about 3 seconds on and 1 second off. 　　　　(3) Use vocal "Air Attack" or corresponding national term when one nation is involved. 　　b. Stay in individual fighting positions, if occupying a position. 　　c. Move to a covered and concealed position, if possible. 　　d. Report all aircraft actions to higher headquarters. 4. The platoon, on order, engages enemy aircraft. 　　a. Places the weapon on the highest rate of fire. 　　b. Selects the proper aim point for the type of aircraft and the direction of flight. 　　c. Engages with one or more of the following: 　　　　(1) Destroy them. 　　　　(2) Force them away from friendly positions, force them to fly higher so that friendly aerial platforms or air defense artillery (ADA) can destroy them. 　　　　(3) Spoil the hostile pilots' aim as they engage friendly forces. *　5. The platoon leader supervises post attack activities when the air threat is passed. 　　a. Announces "cease fire". 　　b. Gives/directs an audible "All Clear" signal using one of the following: 　　　　(1) Uses steady siren note for 1 minute or sustained blast on a vehicle horn, whistle, bugle, or other instrument. 　　　　(2) Uses vocal "All Clear Air Attack" or corresponding national term when only one nation is involved. 　　c. Reestablishes chain of command. 　　d. Forwards damage report and personnel status report to higher headquarters. 　　e. Coordinates casualty treatment and evacuation. 　　f. Directs clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment. 　　g. Coordinates replacement of equipment with higher headquarters. 6. The platoon personnel perform post-attack activities. 　　a. Treat and evacuate casualties. 　　b. Reconstruct damaged fighting positions and field fortifications, if applicable. 7. The platoon continues operations, as directed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Resumes proper formation, if moving. b. Ensures that all weapon systems are manned, if in a defense position.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Conduct Passive Air Defense Measures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6009)

(FM 44-80)	(FM 5-20)	(FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and is directed to conduct passive air defense measures to avoid detection by hostile aircraft. Hostile aircraft (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) are operating in the area of operation (AO). Unit weapon control status is WEAPONS HOLD. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts passive air defense measures in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon uses attack avoidance and damage limiting measures (including observation, dispersion, camouflage, and concealment) to avoid detection and or engagement by hostile aircraft. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader determines that enemy aircraft are operating in the area by notification from higher headquarters or observation.		

* 3. The platoon leader plans for passive air defense measures using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.
    b. Briefs unit on passive defense measures.		

4. The platoon performs passive air defense measures IAW the TSOPs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit their vulnerability.
  (1) Maintains camouflage.
  (2) Covers or shades shiny and reflective items such as optics.
  (3) Ensures that crew-served weapons are manned and air guards are designated.
b. Establishes a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if equipment is available and operational.
c. Maintains proper interval between Soldiers, teams, squads, or positions.
d. Mans observation posts (OPs) and or listening posts (LPs) to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary wing, fixed wing, UAVs).
e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.
f. Disperses supplies and equipment, if possible, to reduce vulnerability to air attack.
g. Complies with ROE.
h. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
441-091-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AIRCRAFT	STP 21-24-SMCT TASK FORCE SOLDIER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RECON PLAT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLT HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Cross an NBC Contaminated Area (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6018)

(<u>FM 3-100</u>)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))
(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)
(FM 7-92)		

ITERATION:		1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to perform a combat mission at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon encounters a nuclear, biological, and or chemical (NBC) contaminated area that it cannot bypass. The type of agent is unknown, if biological and or chemical. The commander has specified the operational exposure guidance (OEG) for nuclear contamination. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon crosses the NBC contaminated area in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon assumes mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. The platoon enters, moves through, and exits the contaminated area along the specified route. The platoon monitors and reports dosage and radiacmeter readings as directed in the OEG.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.
    a. Conducts a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance to identify possible bypass.
    b. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.		

* 3. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The platoon prepares to cross a radiological contaminated area.
   a. Takes actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on the vehicle floor).
   b. Stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.
   c. Checks radiac instruments to ensure dosimeters (IM-93) are zeroed or DT-236s radiac detector are preset.
   d. Assumes MOPP level 4 at least 500 meters from an identified contaminated area.
   e. Closes and secures vehicle hatches if mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permit.
   f. Activates NBC over-pressurization systems if in the closed hatch configuration, if applicable.
 	
5. The platoon prepares to cross a chemically or biologically contaminated area.
   a. Stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials.
   b. Halts and assumes MOPP 4 at least 500 meters from an identified contaminated area.
   c. Attaches M8/M9 chemical detection paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination.
   d. Secures M8A1 chemical detection alarms to vehicles IAW TSOP.
   e. Closes and secures vehicle hatches if METT-TC permits.
   f. Activates NBC over pressurization systems if in closed hatch configuration, if applicable.
 	
6. The platoon crosses the contaminated area.
   a. Conducts movement along route designated by the commander.
   b. Avoids stirring up dust, if possible.
   c. Slows column speed if mounted.
   d. Increases interval and lateral dispersion between squads, personnel and vehicles as METT-TC permits.
   e. Avoids puddles, overhanging branches, and brush.
   f. Monitors radiac instruments for radiation exposure and reports OEG information to the company commander IAW TSOP.
   g. Monitors M8A1 chemical agent alarms and or M22 automatic chemical agent detector alarms (ACADA) and M8/M9 chemical detection paper.
   h. Marks contaminated area.
 	
7. The platoon exits the contaminated area.
   a. Reports exit of the contaminated area to the commander.
   b. Moves at least 500 meters from the area before halting.
   c. Controls the actions of the sections and or squads as they exit.
   d. Submits NBC 1 report with radiation and or chemical or biological data.
   e. Administers first aid to all casualties within five minutes of halt.
   f. Initiates unmasking procedures IAW OPORD, FRAGO, and or TSOP, if NBC monitoring results are negative.
   g. Zeroes IM-93s and or resets DT-236s, if applicable.
   h. Performs immediate decontamination, if the situation permits.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader coordinates for operational decontamination.
 	
9. The platoon continues to monitor the NBC detection devices.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		
11. The platoon treats and evacuates casualties.		
12. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-6027)
(<u>FM 7-8</u>)   (FM 100-6)   (FM 20-3)
(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))   (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-90)   (FM 7-91)   (FM 7-92)
(FM 90-2)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the platoon visually, audibly, and electronically. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon maintains operations security in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon practices active and passive noise, light, and litter discipline. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader protects friendly information by checking or performing the following: a. Prohibits fraternization with civilians (as applicable). b. Makes sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle. c. Conducts inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs). d. Safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. e. Sanitizes all planning areas and positions before departure.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. The platoon employs active and passive security measures.
    a. Mans and performs surveillance from observation posts.
    b. Conducts counter reconnaissance patrols, if possible.
    c. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements, when encountered.
    d. Conducts stand to procedures.
    e. Establishes local security.
    f. Establishes specific levels of alert (based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC].)
    g. Uses camouflage.
        (1) Ensures fighting positions are camouflaged using exposed dirt to break the outline of a position.
        (2) Checks the position from the enemy's point of view.
        (3) Ensures camouflage nets (if used) are properly hung.
        (4) Employs overhead camouflage and sites positions and personnel to prevent detection from the air.
        (5) Keeps personnel and equipment in the shadows, when possible.
        (6) Ensures all personnel use camouflage paint to cover exposed skin.
        (7) Covers all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material, such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.
        (8) Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and or roads, where possible.
        (9) Erases tracks leading into the positions.
      (10) Camouflages equipment by using vegetation to break up the outline of the equipment and covers all reflective surfaces.
    h. Enforces litter discipline.
        (1) Collects and back hauls trash during logistics runs during stationary periods.
        (2) Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely.
    i. Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment.
    j. Controls movement.
        (1) Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique.
        (2) Moves as fast as the situation permits.
        (3) Moves along covered and concealed routes.
 	
4. The platoon practices radio discipline.
    a. Uses the proper radio procedures.
        (1) Changes frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and or TSOP.
        (2) Uses varied transmission schedules and lengths.
        (3) Uses established formats to expedite transmissions.
        (4) Encodes messages or uses secure voice.
        (5) Uses brevity codes, when possible.
        (6) Uses the lowest power settings possible.
        (7) Avoids transmission patterns.
        (8) Maintains radio silence, as directed.
    b. Takes action if jamming is suspected.
        (1) Continues to operate.
        (2) Disconnects the antenna.
        (3) Switches to the highest power.
        (4) Relocates the radio.
        (5) Uses directional antennas.
        (6) Turns the squelch off.
    c. Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions.
    d. Uses the radio in the quiet message mode. Transmits an arranged number		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

of taps or uses the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.
 	
* 5. The platoon practices light discipline.
    a. Conceals lights necessary for planning or reading a map. (A poncho can be used for this purpose). Ensures all flashlights have filters.
    b. Removes or tapes personal items that may reflect light (identification tags, rings, and watches).
    c. Prohibits use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke/fire can be observed by the enemy.
    d. Uses only passive night observation equipment (if possible).
 	
* 6. The platoon practices noise discipline.
    a. Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during final inspections.
    b. Tapes down or removes items that make noise.
    c. Uses normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible.
    d. Prohibits talking except as required to conduct or plan operations.
    e. Ensures arm-and-hand signals are used, to the fullest extent possible, during daylight hours or with night vision devices.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 WEAPONS SQUADS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6036)
(FM 24-35)   (FM 24-35-1)   (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4)   (FM 34-2-1)   (FM 3-5)
(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))   (FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-8)   (FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)   (FM 7-92)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) and or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a chemical attack in its area of operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prepares for a chemical attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon constructs and or reinforces positions, briefs and inspects personnel, positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    a. Directs implementation of defensive preparations consistent with the mission and threat.
    b. Directs members to assume MOPP level 4.
    c. Ensures squad leaders inspect personnel for proper fit of protective masks and clothing.
    d. Implements procedures to prevent contamination of equipment and supplies IAW the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Ensures designated personnel conduct monitoring.
     (1) Operates the chemical agent alarm continuously and upwind when the unit is stationary.
 	
* 3. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
 4. The platoon personnel take additional actions consistent with mission.
   a. Employ proper field sanitation measures and personal hygiene.
   b. Check operation of detection equipment as directed by leaders and supervisors.
   c. Identify and or construct protective shelters.
   d. Use the buddy team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
   e. Cover all exposed equipment and supplies.
   f. Monitor area by testing with detector kits and or paper to determine level of contamination.
   g. Cover their individual equipment and weapons, using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
   h. Attach M8 or M9 chemical detection paper to overgarments, equipment, and supplies.
 	
* 5. The leaders inspect subordinate personnel preparations.
 	
 6. The vehicle commanders and the drivers prepare the vehicles, if applicable.
   a. Store water, rations, and equipment not being used, in the vehicle.
   b. Close all hatches.
Note: Dependent on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
   c. Place covers on crew-served weapons (dependent on the tactical situation).
 	
 7. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.
 	
 8. The platoon takes cover.
 	
* 9. The platoon leader or the designated representative reports the results of monitoring IAW TSOP and or guidance from higher headquarters using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD	STP 21-1-SMCT
		TASK FORCE SOLDIER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6045)
(<u>FM 3-4</u>)   (FM 3-100)   (FM 7-4 (3-21.94))
(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))   (FM 7-7)   (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)   (FM 7-85)   (FM 7-90)
(FM 7-92)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) and or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate actions necessary to protect itself from a nuclear attack (friendly or enemy) in its area of operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prepares for a nuclear attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or commander's guidance. The platoon constructs and or reinforces positions; briefs and inspects personnel; covers, hardens, or otherwise protects equipment; positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions; assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP); and takes cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
3. The platoon leader plans using troop-leading procedures.		
* 4. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.		
* 5. The platoon leader establishes command and control procedures. a. Establishes and checks backup command and control procedures. b. Instructs all personnel to prepare for a nuclear blast .		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. The platoon prepares for nuclear attack.
    a. Deploys for the best dispersion the tactical situation will permit.
    b. Positions alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions as required.
    c. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs
    d. Zeroes dosimeters (two are normally issued to each platoon) and initiate periodic monitoring.
    e. Prepares equipment for best terrain shielding.
    f. Prepares and or hardens defensive positions or shelters.
Note: The platoon locates and selects existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, and tunnels for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.
    g. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.
        (1) Adds sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike and covers openings or positions them away from the strike.
        (2) Wets down the sandbags (enhances neutron radiation shielding and protects sandbags from thermal damage).
    h. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment. Ties down essential antennas and takes down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. (In the offense, one radio is left on.)
    i. Stows all water, rations, and crew-served weapons inside the vehicles.
    j. Ties down all loose equipment. (This prevents equipment from being thrown about by the blast.)
    k. Secures flammable and explosive items away from personnel.
 	
7. The platoon members prepare.
    a. Assume the appropriate MOPP level as directed by the TSOP and or the platoon leader.
    b. Take a position as low as possible within ditches, ravines, culverts, fighting positions, and so forth.
    c. Wear helmets with chinstrap secured.
    d. Brace for the blast.
 	
8. The drivers prepare the vehicles, if applicable.
    a. Position vehicles so that the front of the vehicle faces the direction of the blast.
    b. Turn off the engine and switches.
    c. Close doors.
    d. Make sure the vehicles are placed in trenches or in cuts in roadways defilade to blast, if possible.
 	
* 9. The platoon leader or designated representative inspects to ensure that the platoon is prepared for nuclear attack.
    a. Ensures that vehicles are ready, if applicable.
    b. Secures equipment.
    c. Ensures personnel are prepared.
    d. Ensures medical personnel are prepared.
 	
10. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
3 WEAPONS SQUADS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
RECON PLAT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-6054)

(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-100)	(FM 3-4)
(FM 3-5)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)
(FM 7-85)	(STP 21-24-SMCT)	

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and must react immediately to a chemical attack. The platoon is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level 2. Automatic alarms sound or detector paper changes color. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon reacts to a chemical attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) or the appropriate field manual. The platoon sounds the alarm (vocal or non-vocal), assumes the appropriate MOPP, and takes cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader and squad leaders ensure Soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical attack.
    a. Spread the chemical alarm to all platoon members IAW the TSOPs.
    b. Put on protective masks with hoods within time standards.
    c. Give the alarm: vocal and or nonvocal.
    d. Use collective protective shelters and cover (if available), or any other suitable shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination.
    e. Decontaminate exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going into MOPP level 4.
    f. Assume MOPP 4 as soon as possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Check Soldiers to ensure protective measures are followed.
h. Determine extent and disseminate information on the area of contamination.
i. Ensure contaminated platoon elements do not move through uncontaminated elements, if applicable.
 	
3. The designated personnel initiate chemical monitoring IAW TSOP.
   a. Determine the types of chemicals employed.
   b. Determine the extent of contamination.
 	
4. The platoon takes additional protective measures.
   a. Conducts skin decontamination.
   b. Monitors their buddies IAW the TSOP for signs of chemical poisoning.
   c. Administers a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to Soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, if applicable.
   d. Administers self-aid with nerve agent antidote, if applicable.
   e. Performs immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties in minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
   f. Conducts wipe down and performs spray down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 skin decontamination kits within 15 minutes of attack.
   g. Protects exposed equipment and supplies.
   h. Monitors the area by testing with detector kits, if available.
   i. Uses prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader or designated representative initiates unmasking procedures WITH THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT. (Kit indicates negative results.)
   a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area.
   b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then re-mask and clear their masks.
   c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
     (1) If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR" using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
   d. Directs the platoon to unmask. (Continues to watch for delayed symptoms.)
   e. Ensures casualties are provided medical care.
   f. Reports casualties using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader or designated representative initiates unmasking procedures WITHOUT THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT, using M8 detector paper.
   a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area.
   b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks.
   c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
     (1) If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR" using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
   d. Directs the platoon to unmask.
   e. Ensures casualties are provided medical care.
   f. Reports casualties using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader monitors the situation and adjusts the MOPP level as the nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) situation dictates.
   a. Ensures individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
   b. Ensures periodic chemical monitoring.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader or designated representative submits NBC 1 report to higher		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
headquarters immediately using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means. Note: The NBC 1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of agent/burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked). 9. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes as necessary. 10. The platoon treats and evacuates casualties. *11. The platoon leader or designated representative coordinates operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated. 12. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5009	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 60MM MORTAR SECTION
                3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
                RECON PLAT HQS
                MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                MORTAR SECTION
                RECON PLATOON HQ
                MORTAR PLATOON HQ
                3 RIFLE PLT HQ
                RECON PLATOON
                SCOUT PLT HQ
                HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
                3 RECON SQUADS
                RECON PLT HQS
                MORTAR PLATOON HQS
                BN MORTAR PLT HQ
                THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
                9 RIFLE SQUADS

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-6063)
        (FM 3-100)   (FM 3-3)   (FM 3-5)
        (FM 3-7)   (FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
        (FM 7-7)   (FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-8)
        (FM 7-85)   (FM 7-92)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M		(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and is required to react immediately to a nuclear attack in its area of operations. The platoon members observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom-shaped cloud, a monitoring device detects a nuclear hazard, or the platoon receives a strike warning (STRIKEWARN). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon responds to the initial effects of a nuclear attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon takes immediate actions, automatically and without order, to minimize the initial effects of a nuclear detonation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The platoon takes immediate protective actions.
    a. Takes action without receiving a warning.
       (1) Closes eyes immediately.
       (2) Drops to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drops down inside the vehicle).
       (3) Keeps head and face down and helmet on.
       (4) Remains prone until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling.
    b. Takes action after receiving a warning.
       (1) Identifies the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
shelters).		
(2) Moves to the shelter.		
(3) Takes action to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.		
(4) Keeps clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.		
(5) Protects eyes and minimizes exposed skin areas.		
* 2. The platoon leaders consolidate and reorganize the platoon.		
a. Reestablish chain of command.		
b. Reestablish communications within platoon and with higher HQ.		
c. Submit nuclear, biological and chemical (NBC) 1 (Nuclear) report to higher HQ.		
Note: The NBC 1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).		
d. Treat casualties.		
e. Report casualties.		
f. Evacuate casualties.		
g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual radiation.		
h. Implement continuous monitoring.		
(1) Monitor buddies for signs of radiation sickness.		
(2) Reports personnel total dose daily to higher HQ IAW the TSOP.		
(3) Requests guidance from higher HQ on the operation exposure guidance established by the higher HQ commander.		
Note: If the platoon receives fallout, the company commander determines whether the platoon should remain in position or move based on the mission, tactical situation, radiation dosage received, current dosage rate, and guidance from higher HQ.		
i. Submit damage assessment to higher HQ.		
j. Initiate area damage control plan as required.		
k. Extinguish all fires before they spread out of control.		
l. Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) to higher HQ as necessary.		
* 3. The leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.		
4. The platoon conducts immediate decontamination and coordinates operational decontamination (as soon as the tactical situation permits).		
5. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Employ Nuclear Weapons (07-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: All available OPFOR conventional weapons and forces have been unable stop the enemy's forward progress. The majority of OPFOR units have been destroyed. Nuclear weapons are the only alternative for the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs nuclear weapons to destroy the enemy's advance. Measures are taken to ensure the enemy is unaware of the impending nuclear strike. The OPFOR is warned of a friendly strike and prepares accordingly.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
ANTIARMOR SECTION
3 WEAPONS SQUADS
3 WEAPONS SQUAD
ANTITANK SECTION HQ
3 ANTITANK TEAMS
ANTIARMOR PLT HQ
ANTIARMOR SQUAD

TASK: Destroy Unit Vehicles and Equipment (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-4000)

| (<u>FM 10-14-1</u>) | (FM 7-4 (3-21.94)) | (FM 7-5 (3-21.9)) |
| (FM 7-7) | (FM 7-7J) | |

| **ITERATION:** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (Circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** | T | P | U | (Circle) |

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ). The platoon expects to be overrun by enemy offensive operations or is involved in a withdrawal, retrograde, or other operation in which the platoon must leave behind vehicles, equipment, or supplies (not medical). The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted in limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon destroyed all vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and supplies (less medical) in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, or the commander's guidance. The platoon smashed or burned essential components of, or otherwise rendered unusable, vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and supplies (other than medical) to prevent capture or use by the enemy. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO to destroy vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and supplies that cannot be evacuated. The platoon leader directs the platoon to begin destruction of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. (Medical supplies are NOT destroyed.)		

* 3. The platoon leader supervises emergency destruction of vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and supplies.
    a. Ensures the platoon members understand and comply with the destruction priorities.
    b. Ensures vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and nonmedical supplies are rendered unusable to the enemy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The platoon destroys vehicles, equipment, and spare parts using the following methods, as appropriate.
   a. Removes portable fire extinguishers and discharges fixed fire extinguishers.
   b. Opens hydraulic drain valves.
   c. Uses axe, pick, mattock, sledgehammer, or other heavy implement to destroy and or break all vital components such as engine cylinder blocks and heads, transmissions, power transfer cases, communications equipment, and spare parts.
   d. Uses a bayonet or other cutting tool to slash tires.
   e. Douses vehicles, equipment, and spare parts with fuel removed from fuel tanks or other sources.
   f. Uses incendiary grenades or other suitable devices to ignite vehicles, equipment, and or spare parts.		

* 5. The platoon leader reports the destruction of vehicles, equipment, spare parts, and supplies, to higher HQ as required.		
6. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-4009)

(FM 19-40)	(DD FORM 2745)	(FM 17-98)
(FM 34-2-1)	(FM 7-10)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-91)
(FM 7-92)		

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission at the location and time specified. The platoon has under their control enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) that were captured or surrendered during the operation. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon handles EPWs in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, the guidance from higher HQ, and the Geneva Convention. The platoon segregates, safeguards, and moves the EPWs to the rear as quickly as factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) allow. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader designates a temporary EPW collection point based on METT-TC.		
* 3. The platoon leader notifies higher HQ that the company has EPWs.		
* 4. The platoon leader assigns guards to protect and control EPWs until they can be moved to higher HQ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

5. The platoon searches the EPWs.
   a. Removes all weapons and all documents with intelligence value.
   b. Returns personal items of no military intelligence value such as protective clothing and equipment.
   c. Gives prisoners receipts for personal property taken. (May need to be given at higher HQ).
 	
6. The platoon segregates EPWs, if possible.
   a. Segregates EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology when possible.
   b. Restricts EPWs from areas where they can obtain information about the element's mission, strength, and future operations.
 	
7. The platoon guards keep EPWs silent.
   a. Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders.
   b. Prevents EPWs from planning escape.
   c. Does not talk in front of EPW except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
 	
8. The platoon safeguards EPWs.
   a. Removes EPWs from dangers of the battlefield, if possible.
   b. Does not allow anyone to abuse EPWs.
   c. Treats EPWs humanely.
   d. Prevents any prisoners from escaping.
   e. Provides humane treatment for EPWs without distinction founded on race, nationality, religious belief, political opinions, or other similar criteria.
   f. Provides food to EPWs. (Provides the same rations and drink that are available to company Soldiers.)
   g. Provides medical treatment within their ability.
   h. Complies with ROI, ROE, and the Geneva Convention.
 	
9. The platoon tags the EPWs with Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745, Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag.
   a. Annotates the following information:
     (1) Date and time of capture.
     (2) Capturing unit.
     (3) Grid coordinates of capture.
     (4) Circumstance of capture
   b. Attaches Part A to the EPWs.
   c. Retains Part B for unit records.
   d. Attaches Part C to property.
 	
*10. The platoon leader questions the EPWs.
   a. Attains immediate combat information, if the tactical situation permits.
   b. Ensures questioning does not slow the evacuation process.
 	
11. The platoon speeds EPWs to the company or other designated EPW collection point..
   a. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
12. The platoon continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
ANTIARMOR PLT HQ
ANTIARMOR SQUAD
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
3 WEAPONS SQUADS
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
ANTITANK SECTION HQ
3 ANTITANK TEAMS
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
ANTIARMOR SECTION
RECON PLAT HQS
3 WEAPONS SQUAD

TASK: Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-4018)

(FM 10-27-4)	(FM 100-10)	(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))
(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)	(FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)
(FM 7-92)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and is required to perform routine resupply operations. The resupply method, location, and time have been coordinated with the company first sergeant. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon performs routine resupply operations in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon conducts tactical movement to and from the designated resupply location, as required. The platoon participates in logistical package (LOGPAC), refuel on the move (ROM), or aerial resupply operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader anticipates needs and ensures resupply requests are submitted before current supplies are exhausted. a. Reports equipment status and losses.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Reports supply status.		

* 3. The platoon sergeant ensures required basic loads, supplies, and platoon operational equipment are on hand.
    a. Consolidates requests from section and or squad leaders.
    b. Submits ammunition and resupply requests early for resupply.
    c. Supervises ammunition stockage, when used.
    d. Coordinates with the first sergeant, supply sergeant, or executive officer for support.
        (1) Confirms location of resupply.
        (2) Determines method of resupply (tailgate or service station).
    e. Distributes supplies according to the plan.
    f. Requests fortification materials (Class IV), as appropriate, for obstacle construction during defensive operations.
    g. Requests resupply based on actual losses and expenditures and forecasted requirements.
    h. Ensures requests are encoded when operating radios on a nonsecure net.
    i. Informs the platoon as to which method of resupply will be used (service station, tailgate, or in position).
        (1) Service station method: Determines if individuals, teams, squads, or the entire platoon will rotate through the resupply point at the same time.
        (2) Tailgate method: Determines priority of resupply for fighting positions.
        (3) In position method: When contact with the enemy is imminent.		

* 4. The platoon conducts resupply using logistics package.
    a. Moves to the designated location, if conducting service station method.
    b. Performs resupply as quickly as possible.
    c. Distributes supplies throughout the platoon, based on current and anticipated operations and needs.
    d. Ensures security is maintained during resupply operations.
        (1) Mans crew-served weapons and observations posts continuously.
        (2) Prepares to respond in case the enemy attacks.
    e. Uses back hauling to remove casualties, damaged equipment, excess ammunition, and other items.		

5. The platoon conducts aerial resupply.
    a. Conducts a reconnaissance of the selected landing zone (LZ) or drop zone (DZ) to confirm that it meets the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC) and aircraft size requirements.
    b. Organizes the platoon to receive aerial resupply.
    c. Designates a security element.
    d. Designates a recovery and distribution element.
    e. Secures the LZ (security element).
        (1) Searches the area to ensure it is free of the enemy.
        (2) Establishes mutually supporting positions that provide observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.
        (3) Ensures that the positions are far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions.
        (4) Employs hasty obstacles, as required (for example, Claymore mines).
    f. Identifies a distribution point for supplies.
    g. Prepares the LZ or DZ (recovery and distribution section or squad), once the security element has secured the LZ or DZ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Removes obstacles in the LZ or DZ, if possible, and marks obstacles it cannot remove. (2) Removes foreign object damage that may interfere with the resupply aircraft. (3) Marks the load impact area or aircraft landing point in a manner identified by the platoon leader (for example, smoke, lights, VS 17 panels, field-expedient markers). (4) Divides the air-dropped load (if required) and moves it to the distribution point. (5) Unloads the aircraft, divides the load (if required), and moves it to the distribution point. (6) Conceals the LZ or DZ by removing any indication of its use, such as aircraft tracks, and recovers markers, equipment, and any other items that may identify its use for resupply. h. The platoon sergeant controls the break down of supplies IAW the allocation plan at the distribution point. 6. The platoon leader coordinates refuel on the move, as necessary, using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-2063	Report Tactical Information (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-1270	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted or Dismounted) (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-1317	Prepare Landing and Pickup Zones	ARTEP 7-94-MTP
07-3-2009	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance (Infantry/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment, personnel, and indirect-fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-4027)

(<u>FM 19-40</u>)	(FM 17-98)	(FM 34-2-1)
(FM 7-10)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) and or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission at the location and time specified. During the mission, the platoon captures enemy documents and or equipment that must be processed. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon processes all captured documents and equipment in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the disposition instructions established by higher HQ. The platoon evacuates documents and or equipment to the rear as quickly as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) allow.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

2. The platoon tags all captured documents and equipment.
    a. Annotates type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photos, rifles, or radios).
    b. Annotates date and time of capture.
    c. Annotates place of capture (grid coordinates).
    d. Annotates capturing unit.
    e. Annotates circumstances of capture.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

f. Annotates prisoner's name (if taken from enemy prisoner of war).
 	
* 3. The platoon leader reports capture of documents or equipment to higher HQ.
    a. Reports type of document or equipment.
    b. Reports date and time of capture.
    c. Reports capturing unit.
    d. Reports place of capture (grid coordinates).
 	
* 4. The platoon leader processes all captured documents and equipment IAW TSOP, the OPORD, and or disposition instructions established by higher HQ.
    a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the equipment.
    b. Evacuates documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel as soon as METT-TC allows.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ

TASK: Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad) (07-3-4045)
(<u>FM 4-25.11</u>)   (DA FORM 1155)   (DA FORM 1156)
(DD FORM 1380)   (FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has sustained casualties during the current mission. The platoon has an aidman attached and at least one combat lifesaver for each section and or squad. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize the casualties. The platoon evacuates casualties to the company casualty collection point. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

2. The platoon performs medical treatment.
    a. Identifies serious casualties requiring evacuation.
    b. Administers first aid to casualties.
    c. Stabilizes the casualties.
    d. Administers the proper lifesaving measures.		

3. The combat lifesaver supports the medical treatment of casualties on completion of the combat mission.
    a. Provides initial treatment until medical personnel can treat casualties.
    b. Separates killed in action (KIAs), litter urgent, and litter priority.
    c. Completes DD Form 1380 (US Field Medical Card), which includes initial diagnosis and medication given.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 4. The platoon leader reports the casualties as the tactical situation permits.
    a. Completes DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) for killed or wounded personnel.
    b. Completes DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) for captured or missing personnel.
 	
5. The platoon evacuates casualties to the company casualty collection point.
    a. Positions casualties on vehicles if available.
    b. Retains classified documents (signal operating instructions [SOI], maps, orders, overlays) and mission-essential equipment (night vision devices, crew-served weapon) previously controlled by the casualty.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader requests helicopter evacuation of casualties based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
    a. Submits a nine-line medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) request.
    b. Selects and marks the best available covered and concealed landing zone (LZ).
    c. Moves casualties by the best available means to the LZ and continues treatment.
    d. Assists the flight or ambulance crew with the casualties.
    e. Maintains security of the LZ to include coordinating any suppressive fires required.
 	
7. The platoon evacuates contaminated casualties.
    a. Initiates decontamination before loading.
    b. Covers casualties, if decontamination is impossible, to lessen the spread of contamination en route.
    c. Ensures casualties are not evacuated to an uncontaminated facility or with uncontaminated casualties.
    d. Decontaminates vehicles and equipment as soon as possible.
 	
8. The platoon evacuates civilian and or enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties.
    a. Checks enemy bodies for booby traps.
    b. Searches EPW for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.
    c. Prevents EPW from having access to weapons during evacuation.
    d. Maintains security of EPW casualties.
    e. Evacuates by the same standards as United States (US) casualties.
 	
9. The platoon evacuates KIAs.
    a. Moves to company collection point when the situation permits.
    b. Transports separately from wounded, if possible.
Note: The KIAs are not evacuated using MEDEVAC assets. They are evacuated using unit vehicles or returning logistical packages vehicles.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-1317	Prepare Landing and Pickup Zones	ARTEP 7-94-MTP
07-3-1509	Evacuate KIA Remains	ARTEP 7-94-MTP
07-3-2054	Report Tactical Information (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
3 RECON SQUADS
9 RIFLE SQUADS
60MM MORTAR SECTION
RECON PLAT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-5000)
(FM 101-5)   (FM 7-4 (3-21.94))   (FM 7-5 (3-21.9))
(FM 7-7)   (FM 7-7J)   (FM 7-8)
(FM 7-85)   (FM 7-90)   (FM 7-92)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received a warning order (WARNO) and an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) for an upcoming mission. Mission planning and coordination have been accomplished. Time is available to conduct a rehearsal. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts a rehearsal prior to the beginning of the upcoming operation in accordance with (IAW) the order, FM 101-5, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon uses the OPORD, the synchronization matrix, and the decision support template (DST) as tools to focus and drive the rehearsal. The rehearsal addresses critical aspects of the operation and provides necessary information for subordinate elements to execute their mission. The platoon leader reinforces the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule.
    a. Selects:
        (1) Type of rehearsal.
        (2) Rehearsal technique.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(3) Place of rehearsal.
(4) Attendees.
(5) Enemy course of action (ECOA) to be portrayed.
  b. Coordinates liaison officer (LNO) attendance from adjacent units, if required.
  c. Ensures rehearsal time and location are identified in the platoon OPORD or WARNO.
 	
* 3. The platoon leader prepares for rehearsal.
  a. Identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed.
  b. Allocates time.
  c. Confirms friendly and enemy situations.
    (1) Receives an updated digital report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.
    (2) Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.
    (3) Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.
    (4) Confirms any changes to the company team and platoon task or purpose.
    (5) Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.
  d. Reviews:
    (1) Completeness of task organization.
    (2) Readiness of personnel and material.
    (3) Platoon level of preparation for the assigned mission.
  e. Disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.
 	
* 4. The subordinate leaders complete their planning process.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader executes the rehearsal.
  a. Conducts a formal roll call and ensures that necessary equipment is on hand.
  b. Validates task organization for the mission.
  c. Rehearses synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and own units.
  d. Synchronizes the timing and contribution of each operating system.
  e. Keeps the rehearsal within established time constraints.
  f. Ensures selected events receive appropriate attention.
  g. Ensures absentees receive changes immediately.
  h. Bases the execution actions on the ECOA he selected during the planning process.
    (1) Portrays his best assessment of the ECOA.
    (2) Communicates the enemy commander's:
      (a) Presumed concept of operation.
      (b) Desired effects.
      (c) Intended end state.
  i. Restates any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.
  j. Estimates the time that a FRAGO, codifying the changes, will follow.
  k. Orients participants to the training aid and the terrain.
  l. Defines the standard (what will be accepted as satisfactory performance for the rehearsal).
  m. Visualizes and synchronizes the concept of operations.
  n. Focuses on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

o. Considers the ECOA.
    p. Addresses any points in the operation where the execution of branches or
       sequels is likely to occur.
    q. Rehearses again, if the standard is not met and time is available.
 	
* 6. Subordinate leaders articulate their element's actions and responsibilities.
    a. Use an established format.
    b. Record changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader assembles participants to conduct an after-action review.
    a. Updates OPORD and or plan, as required.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the
    plan identified during the rehearsal.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
60MM MORTAR SECTION
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC

TASK: Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-5018)
(FM 7-90)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon, operating as part of a larger unit, has completed a combat operation or has become too dispersed to continue its task. The enemy has the capability to counterattack. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mortar platoon establishes security and prevents surprise of the main body within three minutes of the leader's order to consolidate. The mortar platoon accounts for all personnel and reestablishes the chain of command for all elements. The mortar platoon mans all automatic weapons and main vehicle weapons within six minutes of the leader's order to consolidate. The mortar platoon confirms all indirect fire targets and covers the critical avenues of approach. The mortar platoon handles all enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) IAW the five "S's." The mortar platoon identifies and stabilizes all WIA and prepares for evacuation. The mortar platoon identifies all killed in action (KIA) and prepares them for evacuation. The mortar platoon redistributes ammunition and supplies so all elements, weapons, and vehicles can perform their tasks. The mortar platoon reports the results of contact, tactical situation, and logistical and personnel status. The mortar platoon submits requests for resupply, replacements, and evacuation IAW unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from FORCE XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The mortar unit leader positions or repositions the observation post (OP) forward to provide security. a. Ensures that members are alert for possible counterattack. b. Ensures that enemy does not engage the unit's main body without warning.		
3. The mortar unit occupies or reoccupies firing positions near the objective and establishes security.		
4. Leaders adjust positions and position small arms weapons. a. Cover likely avenues of approach. b. Ensure mutual support between squads and adjacent units.		
5. The mortar unit searches the area to ensure it is free of the enemy.		
* 6. The mortar unit leader assigns or reassigns temporary sectors of fire to all squads.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The squad leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach.		
8. The mortar unit prepares, replaces, or repairs firing positions and obstacles as needed.		

9. The mortar unit reestablishes the chain of command and communication nets as required.
    a. Ensures each element has a leader.
    b. Ensures all leaders understand the chain of command.
    c. Ensures the unit can communicate with all squads and company headquarters.
    d. Ensures the unit forward observer (FO) can communicate with fire support assets.		

10. The mortar unit fills key positions in the following priority.
    a. Fills leader positions.
    b. Fills drivers positions.
    c. Fills primary vehicle weapons gunner positions.
    d. Fills M203 grenadier positions.		

11. Leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment.		
12. Squad leaders report ammunition, personnel, EPW, and equipment status to the unit leader and request medical assistance.		
13. The mortar unit leader reports status of and requests replacement for personnel, weapons, ammunition, and equipment.		
14. The mortar unit leader requests repair or replacement of vehicles and reports status of vehicle evacuation.		
*15. The mortar unit leader collects and disseminates information about the completed operation.		

16. The mortar unit handles all EPWs IAW the five S's, and tags them.
    a. Searches for weapons, documents, and equipment.
    b. Silences captured personnel.
        (1) Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders.
        (2) Prevents EPWs from planning escape.
        (3) Does not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.
    c. Segregates captured personnel.
        (1) Segregates EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, and civilians.
        (2) Turns wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.
    d. Speeds EPWs to company collection point along with captured documents and equipment (consistent with the situation).
    e. Safeguards the EPWs from harm.
    f. Allows EPWs to retain protective mask and personal safety equipment.
    g. Tags EPWs, documents, and equipment with the date, time, location, circumstances, and unit of capture.
    h. Designates guards to take EPWs to the company collection point.		

17. The mortar unit medic, the squad combat lifesaver, or soldier's buddy administers first aid to casualties.		
18. If no medic is near, the buddy or combat lifesaver calls a medic, who stabilizes		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
the casualty.		

19. The squad or unit evacuates the casualty.
   a. Evacuates casualty(s) to the company casualty collection point.
   b. Avoids causing further injury to the casualty.		

20. When the tactical situation permits, the designated leader requests helicopter evacuation of the casualty(s).
   a. Tasked element selects, secures, and marks a suitable LZ.
   b. Element moves the casualty(s) to the LZ, and continues treatment.
   c. Element aids the flight crew in loading the casualty(s).		

21. Designated soldiers gather personal effects and classified documents (signal operating instructions [SOI], maps, orders, overlays, key lists, and other equipment) of KIA and WIA. (Personal effects stay with WIA.)		

22. The mortar unit evacuates the KIA.
   a. Evacuates them to company collection points.
   b. Transports them separately from wounded.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-4009	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-4045	Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-5027)
(FM 100-14)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a specific mission at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon leader conducts risk management in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), and or commander's guidance. The platoon identifies hazards, assesses hazards, develops controls and makes risk decisions, implements controls, and supervises and evaluates controls. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The platoon leaders at all echelons should conduct risk management within their capability.		
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		
* 3. The platoon leader begins immediately to analyze the mission briefly using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		

* 4. The platoon leader identifies tactical and accidental risks and safety hazards.
    a. Ensures the mission is executed in the safest possible environment, within mission constraints.
    b. Identifies the hazards associated with all aspects and phases of the		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
mission.		
(1) Integrates as a part of the tactical planning process.		
c. Identifies the benefits of safety measures to the unit's mission versus the potential cost of risk or safety hazards paying particular attention to factors of METT-TC.		
d. Conducts continuous assessment during the operation for risk reduction.		
* 5. The platoon leader assesses identified risk or safety hazards.		
a. Determines risk that can be eliminated or avoided.		
b. Assesses the severity of hazards that cannot be eliminated or avoided.		
c. Compares identified risk to the commander's acceptable risk level based on stated mission objectives.		
d. Describes operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) based upon the factors of METT-TC.		
e. Computes overall risk status.		
f. Identifies aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.		
(1) Failures in the direct and indirect fire control plan.		
(2) Land navigation failures.		
(3) Failures in combat identification.		
(4) Inadequate control measures.		
(5) Failures in reporting and communications.		
(6) Weapons control status.		
(7) Battlefield hazards.		
(8) Adjacent units.		
* 6. The platoon leader develops controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.		
Note: Only the commander can make final risk decisions. He alone decides if controls are sufficient and acceptable and whether to accept the resulting residual risk.		
a. Selects the course of action that achieves the commander's intent and minimizes the risk.		
b. Develops procedures that reduce risk.		
c. Develops controls that specify who, what, where, when, why, and how each control will be used.		
d. Integrates controls into rehearsals and mission executions.		
7. The platoon personnel implement risk control procedures.		
* 8. The platoon leader supervises and evaluates risk management controls.		
a. Supervises mission rehearsals and execution to ensure combat safety standards are maintained.		
b. Evaluates the effectiveness of controls and adjusts as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
MORTAR SECTION
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ

TASK: Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-5036)

(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-8)	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-92)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received a warning order (WARNO), an operation order (OPORD), or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) for an upcoming mission. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures (TLP). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon leader conducts TLP in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) and appropriate field manual. All planning, coordination, preparations, rehearsals, inspections, and orders are conducted.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		

* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or aFRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
    a. Includes the following information in the WARNO:
        (1) Platoon mission and platoon leader's time line.
        (2) Enough information for subordinate elements to start preparation for the mission.
        (3) Movement instructions, if movement is to be initiated before OPORD issuance.
        (4) Items not covered in the unit TSOPs.		

* 3. The platoon leader conducts mission analysis.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

Note: All leaders should use the general one-third to two-thirds rule when planning to allow subordinates maximum planning time.
    a. Focuses on determining the platoon's mission and the amount of available time.
    b. Begins immediately to analyze the mission briefly using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
       (1) Uses no more than one-third of available planning time for his planning. (Allows subordinates to have two-thirds of available planning time for their planning.)
       (2) Obtains clarification of the commander's intent two levels up, specified tasks, and implied tasks, if necessary.
       (3) Coordinates with adjacent, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements, as necessary or appropriate.
 	
* 4. The platoon leader makes a tentative plan.
    a. Develops an estimate of the situation which includes:
       (1) Detailed mission analysis.
         (a) Understands the battalion commander's intent and concept.
         (b) Analyzes METT-TC in as much detail as time and quality of information will allow.
         (c) Identifies specified, implied and essential tasks.
         (d) Identifies any constraints; for example, requirements for action and prohibition of actions.
         (e) Restates the platoon's mission statement of who, what, when, where, and why.
       (2) Situational analysis and course of action (COA) development.
         (a) Platoon leader determines one or more ways to achieve the mission.
         (b) Analyzes relative combat power.
         (c) Generates options.
         (d) Array platoon's initial forces.
         (e) Develops schemes of maneuver.
         (f) Assigns headquarters.
       (3) Analysis of each COA.
         (a) Determines advantages and disadvantages.
         (b) Visualizes the flow of battle.
       (4) Comparison of each COA.
         (a) Does the COA accomplish the platoon purpose?
    b. Makes a decision on which COA will be used. (The decision represents the tentative plan.)
 	
* 5. The platoon leader initiates movement IAW the WARNO, OPORD, FRAGO and or unit TSOP. (There may be a need to initiate movement immediately following the issuance of the WARNO.)
    a. Issues necessary orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.
    b. Establishes movement control through the use of waypoints.
    c. Assumes the appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) level.
    d. Dispatches quartering party as necessary.
    e. Begins priorities of work.
    f. Conducts a time-distance check of the route to the start point, as necessary.
    g. Prepares reconnaissance elements for movement.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader conducts reconnaissance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Coordinates with organizations that his reconnaissance elements will pass through or near.
b. Completes a personal reconnaissance when time allows.
c. Completes a map reconnaissance when time does not allow a personal reconnaissance.
d. Requests reconnaissance assets, if the risk of enemy contact is high.
 	
* 7. The platoon leader completes the plan.
   a. Adjusts the plan based on results of the reconnaissance.
   b. Ensures the plan meets the requirements of the mission and the commander's intent.
 	
* 8. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.
   a. Ensures subordinates understand mission, commander's intent, concept of the operation, and their assigned tasks.
   b. Issues the order within sight of the objective or on defensive terrain. (When this is not possible, a terrain model or sketch should be used.)
 	
* 9. The platoon leader supervises preparations and refines the order.
   a. Conducts a rehearsal, if possible.
   b. Conducts inspections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP ARTEP 7-5-MTP ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP ARTEP 7-7J-MTP ARTEP 7-8-MTP ARTEP 7-90-MTP ARTEP 7-92-MTP ARTEP 7-XC-MTP ARTEP 7-XD-MTP ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: SCOUT PLT HQ
HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
RECON PLT HQS
BN MORTAR PLT HQ
THREE RIFLE PLT HQS
MORTAR PLATOON HQS
3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
RECON PLAT HQS
RECON PLATOON HQ
MORTAR PLATOON HQ
3 RIFLE PLT HQ
RECON PLATOON
MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Establish Radio Communications (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-5054)
        (<u>FM 24-1</u>)   (FM 24-12)   (FM 24-18)
        (FM 24-19)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ). The platoon has moved to an assembly area or other location that requires them to establish radio communications to provide information exchange between platoon elements, higher HQ, and fire support elements. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The signal annex to the operation order (OPORD) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon establishes radio communications in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon prepares the radio system for operation and enters the appropriate net. The platoon maintains communications security.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader and or platoon sergeant locates radio stations (primary and alternate) some distance from the unit headquarters or command post. Note: Long-range enemy artillery fire, missiles, or aerial bombardment directed at the stations as a result of enemy direction finding will not strike the command post area. 　　　a. Allows for effective use of terrain in an electronic warfare environment. 　　　b. Avoids frequency interference from power lines and other friendly sources. 　　　c. Provides physical security from attack. 　　　d. Provides the best possible cover and concealment consistent with reliable transmission and reception of required stations.		
3. The platoon prepares the communication systems for operation. 　　　a. Ensures that digital equipment is initialized and operating IAW TSOP and applicable manuals. 　　　b. Installs required antenna.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Sets assigned frequencies.
d. Makes required settings.
e. Programs equipment for secure operations using key list or appropriate keying devices, if applicable.
 f. Checks all system components for operational abilities.
g. Provides security for communications security (COMSEC) items.
 	
4. The infantry platoon enters the company command net.
    a. Establishes the platoon internal net.
    b. Monitors the fire support net.
 	
5. The reconnaissance platoon enters the battalion operations and intelligence net, the battalion command net, or both depending on TSOP.
    a. Monitors the fire support net.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
                FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
                MORTAR SECTION
                60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Operate a Fire Direction Center (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-5072)
        (FM 23-91)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (DA FORM 2399-R)
        (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon's fire-direction center (FDC) controls indirect fires during combat operations. Squad-sized enemy forces have been operating in the area and harassing friendly forces. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The FDC maintained communications with supported unit(s). It processed calls for fire and sent data to gunners within 2 minutes (without the MFCS) or within 1 minute (with the MFCS) of the last element of the call for fire. It issued subsequent fire commands within 30 seconds (without MFCS) or 15 seconds (with MFCS) after receipt of corrections. The FDC controlled mortar fires and provided accurate fire-for-effect (FFE) data for the supported unit(s). Then, the mortar unit engaged the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE. The mortar platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader gained or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2), the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); FM communications; maps; aerial photos; intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs); current intelligence from the company commander or battalion S2; and other applicable and available information sources.		
Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC. Having the MFCS will change some aspects of this task.		

2. The FDC maintained communications with higher and supporting unit(s), using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.
      a. Monitored battalion mortar fire-direction net (voice), company mortar net (voice), field artillery fire direction net (voice), and platoon net.
      b. Functioned as the net control station for the battalion mortar fire-direction net.
      c. Maintained continuous communications with battalion tactical operations center (TOC), battalion fire-support officer (FSO), mortar platoon leader, the other section's FDC, squads separated from section, and fire-support teams (FISTs) of supported units.		

3. The FDC computers controlled the mortar platoon's indirect fires, and they-- a. Prepared and maintained target lists, target overlays, and schedules of fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepared and maintained current and planned firing positions.		
c. Determined and applied registration corrections.		
Note: They used an M16 plotting board to compute data when computer was inoperable or unavailable. Maintained DA forms in a similar way.		
d. Used computers to maintain record (DA Form 2399-R) and data sheet (DA Form 2188-R).		
e. [Section leader] Maintained the section's ammunition records.		
f. [Platoon sergeant] Ensured the ammunition records were maintained.		
* 4. The section leader supervised the FDC.		
a. Controlled FDC personnel.		
b. Supervised all fire missions.		
c. Verified fire commands.		
d. Ensured fires were correctly plotted.		
e. Supervised the FDC sleep plan to ensure round-the-clock operation.		
f. Ensured that the FDC used proper radiotelephone operating procedures.		
g. Ensured that the FDC personnel understood their role in defending the section's perimeter.		
* 5. The section leader maintained a current situation map (SITMAP).		
a. Ensured that the SITMAP--		
(1) Showed the locations of friendly units to within 100 meters.		
Note: FBCB2 screens do not provide locations for every friendly element on the battlefield such as dismounted infantry squads, scout OPs, or allied troops that might be operating in or adjacent to the platoon's battle space. The platoon can input icons representing these formations into the FBCB2 system based on FM-transmitted reports, but they do not update in real time. This is the reason why the leader should not rely on the FBCB2 system as the sole instrument for clearing fires and preventing fratricide.		
(2) Showed targets (to within 100 meters of accuracy).		
Note: Red-force data is distributed down to all vehicles from the battalion S2 with threat icons based on spot reports (SPOTREPs). A vehicle commander sends SPOTREPs of threat activity and obstacles over the FBCB2. These automatically populate the systems in the VC's element with a threat icon, while leaders verify and forward the information. However, the Red-force data generated by FBCB2 should never be considered a complete threat picture. Leaders must ensure that vehicle scan plans and fire-control and distribution plans are adequate to detect threat forces not yet reported by digital means.		
(3) Included fire-support coordination measures.		
(4) Included friendly unit graphic control measures.		
b. Updated map continuously based on the changing tactical situation.		
Note: The platoon leader receives FBCB2 overlays (maneuver, threat forces, obstacles, fire support, CSS) that he can filter, simplify, and forward digitally to all vehicle commanders. However, he should also create and maintain traditional overlays and maps in case of a communication failure or system crash.		
* 6. The platoon or section sergeant ensured that the current SITMAP was maintained.		
* 7. The FDC computed and applied meteorological corrections.		
a. Computed corrections to the nearest 1 mil in deflection and to the nearest one-eighth change in range.		
b. Applied meteorological (MET) corrections to all current firing data.		
c. Figured and applied MET corrections within 15 minutes after receipt of each applicable MET message. If sent digitally, applied MET corrections within 2 minutes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

8. The platoon or section sergeant ensured that the FDC computed meteorological data and applied it to the firing data.
Note: When the platoon has more than one FDC, the senior leader appoints one of them to be in charge.
 	
9. When both sections fired together from the same location, the controlling FDC assumed responsibility.
    a. Computed firing data for both sections.
    b. Issued the fire command designating the platoon, section, or squad to deliver fire.
 	
10. When the sections employed together from the same location, the noncontrolling FDC validated fire requests and computed firing data as a check on the controlling FDC.
 	
11. When sections separated, the second FDC section monitored fire requests and computed initial firing data for its own mortars.
 	
12. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RECON PLT HQS
            MORTAR PLATOON HQS
            3 RIFLE PLATOON HQS
            RECON PLAT HQS
            RECON PLATOON HQ
            MORTAR PLATOON HQ
            3 RIFLE PLT HQ
            RECON PLATOON
            MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
            MORTAR SECTION
            SCOUT PLT HQ
            HVY MORTAR PLT HQ
            BN MORTAR PLT HQ
            THREE RIFLE PLT HQS

TASK: Prepare for Combat (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)   (07-3-5081)

(<u>FM 7-8</u>)	(DA FORM 1155)	(DA FORM 1156)
(DA FORM 2404)	(DD FORM 2745)	(DA FORM 5988-E)
(FM 7-4 (3-21.94))	(FM 7-5 (3-21.9))	(FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J)	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)
(FM 7-92)		

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) and or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The platoon is presently occupying an assembly area. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prepares for combat in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or the commander's guidance. The platoon rehearses the plan and or mission, conducts a final inspection, performs personnel and equipment checks, requests additional combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) assets; and ensures attachments are checked for mission readiness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader gains and or maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.		
* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the platoon using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

* 3. The platoon leader plans the mission using troop-leading procedures.
    a. Organizes the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.
    b. Coordinates plans and actions as required using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Coordinates scheme of maneuver with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (2) Coordinates current intelligence with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (3) Coordinates control measures with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (4) Coordinates communications and signals with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (5) Coordinates time schedules with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (6) Coordinates support requirements with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
      (7) Coordinates fire plans with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
 	
  4. The crew and the platoon members prepare for combat.
    a. Perform vehicle and equipment preventive maintenance checks and services and before operation checks.
    b. Load the vehicle weapon systems, if applicable.
    c. Service and clean individual equipment.
    d. Load individual weapons.
 	
* 5. The platoon leader, the platoon sergeant (PSG), and or the vehicle commanders (VCs) ensure miscellaneous supplies are loaded.
    a. Ensure they have maps with current overlay.
    b. Ensure they have notebooks with pens and pencils.
    c. Ensure they have the TSOP.
    d. Ensure they have the enemy prisoner of war (EPW) DD Form 2745(Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag, and Document Tags).
    e. Ensure they have map-marking pens.
    f. Ensure they have a watch and compass.
    g. Ensure they have vehicle documents, as required.
    h. Ensure they have signal operation instructions (SOI) extract.
    i. Ensure they have protractor.
    j. Ensure they have DA Form 1155 (Witness or Individual Statement Form).
    k. Ensure they have DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report).
    l. Ensure they have binoculars and night vision devices with spare batteries.
 	
* 6. The platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and or squad leaders inspect the vehicle.
    a. Ensure vehicle is loaded in accordance with the unit load plan.
    b. Ensure vehicle is topped off.
    c. Ensure water cans are full.
    d. Ensure meals, ready to eat (MRE), are stowed.
    e. Ensure weapons cleaning kits are present and complete.
    f. Ensure vehicle first-aid kit is present and complete.
    g. Ensure tool bag is complete.
    h. Ensure operator's manual is present with the latest changes posted.
    i. Ensure current equipment inspection and maintenance worksheet (DA Form 2404 or 5988-E) is on hand.
    j. Ensure fire extinguishers are present and serviceable.
    k. Ensure oil levels are correct.
    l. Ensure battery cables are secure and posts and terminals are clean.
   m. Ensure suspension components are serviceable.
    n. Ensure all lights are operational.
    o. Ensure bilge pumps are operational, if applicable.
    p. Ensure interior is clean.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
q. Ensure all gauges are functional.		
r. Ensure air filters are clean.		
s. Ensure warning triangles are present.		
t. Ensure all equipment is strapped down.		
u. Ensure tracks or tires are serviceable.		
v. Ensure no fuel leaks are detected.		
w. Ensure belts are serviceable, if applicable.		
x. Ensure cold start system is operational, if applicable.		
* 7. The platoon leader, the platoon sergeant, and or the squad leaders inspect the vehicle's armament.		
a. Ensure weapon systems are clean, lubricated, and functional.		
b. Ensure sights are clean and operational.		
c. Ensure vision blocks are clean and secure, if applicable.		
d. Ensure integrated sight unit is operational and focused, if applicable.		
e. Ensure traversing and elevation systems are functional.		
f. Ensure weapons are properly mounted, to include the locks and pins.		
g. Ensure all ready-box access doors are secured, if applicable.		
h. Ensure ammunition is serviceable and stowed IAW the unit load plan.		
i. Ensure all boresight and zero procedures have been completed, if applicable.		
j. Ensure battlesight is indexed IAW OPORD, if applicable.		
k. Ensure spare barrels are present, clean, and serviceable.		
l. Ensure boresight kits are present, if applicable.		
m. Ensure headspace and timing are set on the machine gun, if applicable.		
n. Ensure prefire checklist is completed and posted, if applicable.		
* 8. The platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and or squad leaders inspect all communications equipment.		
a. Ensure radio checks are complete.		
b. Ensure radios are mounted and secured.		
c. Ensure matching unit is functional, if applicable.		
d. Ensure hand mikes are connected properly.		
e. Ensure vehicle crewman helmets are connected and functional.		
f. Ensure antenna balls are present and tapped or tied down.		
g. Ensure spare batteries are on hand.		
h. Ensure operator's manuals are present.		
i. Ensure single-channel ground and airborne radio system (SINCGARS) backpack is complete.		
j. Ensure all connections and receptacles are clean.		
k. Ensure secure equipment is operational and the proper fills are set, if applicable.		
l. Ensure telephones (TA 312/TA 1) are complete and operational, if applicable.		
m. Ensure telephone wire (WD-1) spools are present, if applicable.		
n. Ensure antenna (OE 254) is complete and serviceable, if applicable.		
o. Ensure remote radio set (AN/GRA-39) complete and operational, with spare batteries, if applicable.		
p. Ensure vehicle intercom (AN/VIC-1) is operational, if applicable.		
q. Ensure FBCB2 is complete and operational, if applicable.		
r. Ensure all required nets are entered and functioning.		
9. The crew and or the platoon members prepare vehicle NBC equipment, if applicable.		
a. Ensure M11 decontamination apparatus is mounted in each vehicle, if		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
applicable.		

    b. Ensure hasty decontamination kit (one per M11) is in each vehicle.

    c. Ensure M8A1 chemical agent alarm system is operational, with spare batteries (BA-3517/U, BA 3030/U) and M273 maintenance kit and appropriate technical manuals (TMs) are on hand, if applicable.

    d. Ensure M256 chemical agent detection kit is on hand.

    e. Ensure contamination marking set is on hand.

    f. Ensure IM93/UD dosimeter is zeroed.

    g. Ensure PP1578A/PD radiac charger is on hand, if applicable.

    h. Ensure IM174/PD radiacmeter is operational.

    i. Ensure AN/PDR-27 or AN/VDR-2 radiac set with spare batteries is operational, if applicable.

10. The crew and or the platoon members inspect ancillary equipment.

    a. Ensure mine detector is operational, if applicable.

    b. Ensure demolition kit is complete, if applicable.

    c. Ensure platoon early warning system is complete and operational.

    d. Ensure night vision devices are operational.

    e. Ensure global position system is operational.

    f. Ensure camouflage systems are complete.

*11. The platoon leader, the platoon sergeant, and or the squad leaders inspect all needed equipment and personal gear.

    a. Inspect helmets, to include the webbing, headband, and camouflage cover.

    b. Inspect protective masks and mask related items.

Note: The Soldiers should be instructed to don their masks to make sure each provides an airtight seal and to make any adjustments.

        (1) M1 waterproof bag.

        (2) M8 chemical detection paper.

        (3) M258A1 decontamination kit.

        (4) Nerve agent antidote kit (Mark 1) injectors.

        (5) Antifogging kit.

    c. Inspect individual weapons.

    d. Inspect personnel identification.

        (1) Valid and correct identification (ID) tags (dog tags).

        (2) Valid ID card.

        (3) Current drivers licenses (drivers).

Note: The driver should have a valid license for the vehicle to which he is assigned; however, he should not be the only crewman with a license for this vehicle.

    e. Inspect individual load-bearing equipment for serviceability.

        (1) Individual equipment belt.

        (2) Canteens with cup and cover.

            (a) Canteens filled.

            (b) NBC caps on the canteens.

        (3) First-aid case with field dressing.

        (4) Ammunition cases.

        (5) Suspenders.

        (6) Pistol holster with lanyard (as required).

        (7) Flashlight.

        (8) Earplugs.

        (9) M58A1 individual decontamination kit.

      (10) Bayonet.

    f. Inspect personal equipment and clothing IAW the TSOP.

*12. The platoon leader, the platoon sergeant, and or the squad leaders brief crews

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

on the operation.
    a. Brief start point, time, and location.
    b. Brief formations and order of march.
    c. Brief friendly locations. (Update friendly and enemy information in digital devises, if applicable.)
    d. Brief the enemy situation. (Update friendly and enemy information in digital devises, if applicable.)		

*13. The platoon leader and or the platoon sergeant requests additional combat support assets using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means, as required.		
*14. The platoon leader and or the platoon sergeant requests combat service support using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means, as required.		

*15. The platoon leader/sergeant ensures attachments are briefed.
    a. Briefs the platoon's mission and the commander's intent.
    b. Briefs the specific and the implied tasks.
    c. Briefs the TSOP.
    d. Briefs the overall plan.
    e. Briefs recent enemy activities.		

*16. The platoon leader or his designated representative ensures attachments are checked for mission readiness.		
*17. The platoon leader or his designated representative ensures attachments are linked up with subordinate leaders within the platoon.		
*18. The platoon leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.		
*19. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.		
20. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP ARTEP 7-XE-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-5054	Conduct Risk Management (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-5072	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-2-6054	Maintain Operations Security (Antiarmor Company/Platoon)	ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
07-3-4018	Perform Resupply Operations (Antiarmor/Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-91-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XE-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5027	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-5036	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP
07-3-6027	Maintain Operations Security (Infantry/Mortar/Reconnaissance Platoon/Squad)	ARTEP 7-4-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-MTP
		ARTEP 7-5-TEST-MTP
		ARTEP 7-7J-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-8-MTP
		ARTEP 7-90-MTP
		ARTEP 7-92-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XC-MTP
		ARTEP 7-XD-MTP
		ARTEP-7-5-1-TEST-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: MORTAR PLT HQ/FDC
FOUR MORTAR SQUADS
MORTAR SECTION
60MM MORTAR SECTION

TASK: Process a Call for Fire (Mortar Platoon)   (07-3-5090)
(DA FORM 2399-R)   (DA FORM 2188-R)   (FM 7-90)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mortar platoon has displaced to a new firing position, and the fire-direction center (FDC) has received a call for fire. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment including, if available, the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS); communications with higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate elements; and guidance on the rules of engagement and interaction (ROE and ROI). The operational environment might include coalition forces or noncombatants. Some iterations of this task should be performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The FDC determined initial data and the gunners received it within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with the Mortar Fire-Control System (MFCS), within 1 minute and 30 seconds. After receiving corrections, the FDC issued subsequent fire commands within 30 seconds (without MFCS) or 15 seconds (with MFCS). The mortar platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Force XXI battle command, brigade, and below (FBCB2) standardizes reports, which streamlines reporting. The reports include the SALT report; the medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) request; the NBC-1 report, the call-for-fire report, the check-fire report, and the situation report (SITREP). Standardized reports help ensure that all required information is included; reduce transmission errors; and allow message storage for later retrieval and reference.		
* 1. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) recorded the call for fire and repeated it to the forward observer (FO).		

2. The FDC determined if the unit could accept the fire mission.
    a. Verified that the target was in the unit's area of responsibility.
    b. Verified that firing on the target would not endanger friendly troops.
    c. Verified that the fire request supported the overall mission of the supported unit(s).
    d. Verified that the required ammunition was available and that it met the commander's guidance.
    e. Verified that the target did not conflict with any fire-support coordination measures.
    f. If needed, obtained the authorization of the fire-support officer (FSO).		

3. The FDC issued the order. Note: The MFCS is an automated fire-control system that integrates mortar platoons into current and future fire-support command architecture. The MFCS allows mortar squads to operate semiautonomously. This gives them some flexibility in tactical employment, even though they remain under the control of a central FDC. a. Determined initial data and sent it to the guns within 2 minutes of the last element of the call for fire or, if equipped with MFCS, within 1 minute and		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
30 seconds.		
b. Determined subsequent corrections within 30 seconds or, if equipped with MFCS, within 15 seconds.		
c. Recorded all firing data on the computer's record (DA Form 2399-R).		
d. Updated the data sheet (DA Form 2188-R).		
e. Ensured that the firing data of the FDC chief and assistant agreed within the following limits:		
(1) The deflection was within 10 mils (plotting board) or within 1 mil (MBC).		
(2) The range was within 25 meters (using the plotting board or the MBC).		
(3) The charge was without error for the 60-mm, 81-mm, and 120-mm mortars.		
(4) The time was within 2/10 (1/5) second.		
4. The RATELO announced the initial fire command to the mortar squad(s), including all elements necessary for accomplishing the mission:		
a. Shell and fuze.		
b. Mortar(s) to fire.		
c. Method of fire.		
d. Mortar(s) to follow.		
5. Squad repeated the fire commands and applied the correct data to the guns.		
6. Mortar unit fired rounds.		
7. The FDC chief announced to the RATELO the time of flight of the rounds.		
8. When rounds were fired, the RATELO announced to the FO "Shot, over."		
9. The chief computer determined the number and type of rounds fired.		
10. The RATELO announced, "Splash, over," 5 seconds before the impact of the round(s).		
11. The FDC repeated steps 2 through 4 for all subsequent commands, until the FO announced "End of mission."		
12. The RATELO recorded the results of the fire mission and completed the ammunition portion of DA Form 2399-R.		
13. The platoon complied with the ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE USMTF (JINTACCS) MESSAGE	STP 21-24-SMCT
		TASK FORCE SOLDIER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its missions. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. Using units may modify this evaluation, based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) or other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander or leader. Selected training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation that involves the total unit and employs a realistic OPFOR and the use of multiple-integrated laser engagement system (MILES). At the end of the evaluation, the unit and evaluating commander or leader can identify the strengths and weaknesses of the evaluated unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Prepare the Evaluation. The evaluating unit commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities.

    a. *Prepare the Evaluation Instrument*. The example evaluation scenario in Table 6-1 contains the tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation.

Table 6-1. Example of an evaluation scenario.

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
1	Conduct preevaluation activities (for example, install, align, and troubleshoot MILES equipment; conduct inspections; draw equipment and ammunition).	Before start time		
2	Conduct advance party activities.	1 hr.	Day 1	0800
3	Move to and occupy assembly area.	2 hrs.		0900
4	Receive operation order (OPORD).	15 mins.		1115
5	Plan operations using the troop-leading procedures (TLPs).	2 hrs.		1130
6	Prepare for operations.	30 mins.		1330
7	Conduct a rehearsal.	2 hrs.		1400
8	Conduct a passage of lines as passing unit.	3 hrs.		1600
9	Conduct an area or zone reconnaissance.	6 hrs.		1900
10	Intermediate after-action review (AAR).	1 hr.	Day 2	0130
11	Cross a water obstacle.	2 hrs.		0800
12	Conduct a link-up.	2 hrs.		1000
13	Conduct a movement to contact.	10 hrs.		1200
14	Conduct intermediate AAR.	1 hr.		2200
15	Depart field location (administrative move).		Day 3	0800
16	Conduct final AAR.	2 hrs.		1300
Total Time: 34 hrs. 45 mins.				
Times shown are for illustration purposes only and should not be used for planning.				

    (1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element by using Chapter 2. Record the selected missions in the unit's proficiency worksheet (DA Form 7506).

    (2) List each mission on a task summary sheet (DA Form 7502).

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheets that are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations (Table 6-1, example of an evaluation scenario). Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct an in-process AAR.

b. *Forecast and Requisition Resources*. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experiences with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Example of consolidated support requirements.

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS			
Ammunition		**Quantity**	
5.56-mm (Blank)		150 Rounds for Each Rifleman	
5.56-mm (Blank)		400 M249 Machine Guns	
7.62-mm (Blank)		400 M240B Machine Guns	
Hand Grenade (Practice)		2 for Each Rifleman	
Hand Grenade Fuse (Practice)		2 for Each Rifleman	
Other Items		**Quantity**	
Batteries—BA 200 (6-volt)		36 Each	
Batteries—BA 3090 (9-volt)		1,020 Each	
MILES Equipment	**Platoon**	**Evaluators**	**Opposing Force**
M4 MILES Kit	24		6
IM240B MG MILES Adapter	2		1
M249 Machine Gun	6		1
Controller Gun		4	
Small-Arms Alignment Fixture		1	
Javelin	3		1
This is an example only and is not intended to reflect all or any of the MILES equipment required by a unit to conduct an exercise.			

c. *Select and Prepare the Field Evaluation Site*. Required size, type of terrain, opposing force (OPFOR), and administrative requirements form the basis for site selection. For this evaluation, an area of _____meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to enemy doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area that is required to support the evaluation.

d. *Plan Indirect Fire Simulation*. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire marker control system outlined in training circular (TC) 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters that will simulate the tactical fire direction center (FDC). The control

headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the observers and or controllers who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the observer and or controller may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. Field manual (FM) 7-0 and FM 7-1 provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit can reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. <u>**Select and Train Observers and/or Controllers.**</u> Evaluators must be highly qualified to enhance the training experience for the evaluated unit by providing valid, credible observations. The evaluator should be equal or senior in rank to the leader being evaluated. Ideally, the evaluator should have held the position himself, as it lends credibility to his role. Selected observers and or controllers at a minimum should—

- Be familiar with the evaluated organization's mission-essential task list (METL).
- Be tactically and technically proficient in the tasks evaluated.
- Know the evaluation standards.
- Follow the tactical and field tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) for the organization being evaluated.
- Apply relevant information about the evaluated unit, such as wartime missions, personnel turbulence, leader fill, and equipment status.
- Be trained and rehearsed.
- Know the terrain. (Conduct a reconnaissance when possible).
- Know opposing force training objective.

a. Observer and or controller standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas:

(1) *Evaluation Design.* Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. Observer and or controller must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

(2) *Multiple-Integrated Laser Engagement Simulation.* Each observer and or controller, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

(3) *Evaluation Control System.* This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

- Rules of engagement.
- Observer and or controller duties and responsibilities.
- Communication systems.
- Evaluation data collection plan.

b. A recorder or recorders should be designated by the evaluation control headquarters to receive "kill" information or results and time data from the observers and or controllers.

6-4. <u>**Documentation.**</u> Use DA Forms 7503, 7504, and 7505 to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C in determining the overall final unit rating.

a. The environmental data sheet (DA Form 7503) records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

b. The personnel and equipment loss report (DA Form 7504) records information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

c. The unit data sheet (DA Form 7505) records personnel and equipment status.

The senior observer and or controller have the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on their findings as well as input from subordinate observers and or controllers. Subordinate observers and or controllers use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from chapter 5 and task summary sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior observer and or controller compile the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the subordinate observers and or controllers may be addressed by the senior observer and or controller in the comments portion of the unit's proficiency work sheet.

6-5. Select and Train the Opposing Force. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the enemy in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. *Selection*. Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 Soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. *Training*. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

(1) Installation and operation of MILES devices.

(2) Rules of engagement (ROE).

(3) Enemy small unit tactics.

(4) Selected training scenarios.

(5) OPFOR weapons and equipment (if available).

(6) Safety procedures.

c. *Opposing Force Strength*.

(1) **Offense.** Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be one that is strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, and also one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) **Defense.** The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. It must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. In order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation, once the OPFOR establishes its plan, it must use the same plan for all other similar units for that event.

6-6. Conduct the Evaluation. Evaluations are divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

    a. *Pre-evaluation*.

        (1) The senior observer and or controller and all other observers and or controllers must reconnoiter the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation.

        (2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and fragmentary order (FRAGO) to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario.

        (3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions as required.

        (4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

        (5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The observers and or controllers should make an equipment-function check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.

    b. *Evaluation*.

        (1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior observer and or controller for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense. Instead, it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior observer and or controller have direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other observers and or controllers do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. Observers and or controllers are neutral throughout the evaluation.

        (2) Once the senior observer and or controller issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

        (3) The senior observer and or controller can terminate a part if the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or so much damage that the part cannot be completed. The observer and or controller must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the task summary sheet and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, "conducting sustainment operations" follow the completion of each event or action. During this period, the senior observer and or controller will direct the unit to remain in position while "replacements" (for personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed), are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, observer and or controller must perform the following actions:

            (a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

            (b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior observer and or controller should direct the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) The following guidelines should be followed by the observers and or controllers.

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups etc.).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce ROE.

(d) Spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and the unit's location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission at the appropriate time.

c. *Post-evaluation*. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions:

(1) The unit observer and or controller debrief subordinate observers and or controllers and compile all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The unit observer and or controller must complete the task summary sheets.

(3) The unit observer and or controller must turn in all completed observer and or controller packets (with the observer and or controller scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The unit observer and or controller must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5) Each element observer and or controller should conduct an AAR of his element's performance.

6-7. Conduct the After-Action Review.

a. *General.* At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning.

b. *Feedback.* Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "database" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member. This information becomes an important part of the discussion and is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c. *Prepare the After-Action Review.* The AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) **Review Training Orders and Objectives.** Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The observer and or controller should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) **Observe the Exercise.** This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between the unit's success and failure. The observer and or controller do not need to remain close to the unit leader; more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the observer and or controller must be present when the commander issues the order. The observer and or controller should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events. Examples of critical events may include—

- Conducting a road march.
- Crossing a radiologically contaminated area.
- Performing unit supply operations.
- Responding to a nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) attack.

(3) **Select the Site and Assemble the Participants.** After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. (The OPFOR or unit objective is normally suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.)

(4) **Debrief Observers and or Controllers.** While the units are moving to the selected site, observers and or controllers should be debriefed. The senior observer and or controller must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise events in the order in which they occurred.

(5) **Review the Events.** After the senior observer and or controller has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events which are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects as many events as can cover in detail (during the time allotted for the AAR) and places them in chronological order.

d. *Conduct the After-Action Review.* Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

(1) **Organize the Participants.** When the observer and or controller and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's observer and or controller are located with the element for which he is responsible.

(2) **State the Training Objectives.** The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) **Lead the Discussion.** The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, he directs the participants to draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. If an AAR is to be effective, the AAR leader should—

- Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- Suggest that the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- Suggest that the players discuss not only what happened, how it happened but how their performance could have been improved.

e. *Focus the Discussion.* Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit. To make this happen, do the following:

- Relate events to subsequent results.
- Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.
- Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(1) *Sequence of Events.* Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards even at the lowest level?

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(2) *Summarize Key Points.* The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. An effective AAR leader—

(a) Maintains order and discipline.

(b) Reviews the training objectives.

(c) Addresses important events as they occurred and what the unit could have done to improve upon them. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the consequences of mistakes. One mistake is often directly related to another.

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Involves participants in the discussion.

(g) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.

(h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

f. *Reference Materials.* The reference materials (FMs and TCs) for conducting an AAR should be reviewed.

APPENDIX A – COMBINED ARMS STRATEGY

A-1.   Development of the combined arms training strategy (CATS) is the responsibility of the proponent, not individual units. CATS should be available to the using unit through the standard Army training system (SATS).

A-2.   The CATS is the Army's over arching strategy for the current and future training of the force. It describes how the Army will train the total force to standard in the institution, unit, and through self-development. It also identifies, quantifies, and justifies the training resources required to execute the training.

A-3.   The CATS provides a mix of collective and individual tasks, and it is recommended that they be trained to standard by the units. It also provides a range of events that furnishes a menu from which units may choose as they decide how to train those tasks. Along with presenting the tasks, the CATS data contains information on recommended prerequisite tasks for a specific task and the required frequency to perform the tasks to attain proficiency. You may access this data as a guideline while working on various SATS modules.

A-4.   During the process of developing their mission-essential tasks list (METL) and essential-collective task list (ECTL) training strategies, commanders and leaders should refer to CATS information if it is available for their unit type. As a reference, CATS can save time and effort in researching appropriate event types and types of target audience units to participate in these event types.

Note: CATS data does not include all the tasks for each of the available echelons and unit types.

A-5.   The CATS and related plans, developed by the proponent, provide the means to—

a. Establish training requirements.

b. Determine who (units and or individuals), when, where (site), and how (methods and or media) collective and individual critical tasks will be trained.

c. Identify required resources for training.

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX B - EXERCISE OPORD

SAMPLE COMPANY OPERATION ORDER

_____
(Classification)

Copy _____ of _____ copies
Headquarters (_____)
ALPHA REPUBLIC
(Coordinates) AKUSK
_____

OPERATION ORDER   _____

References: Map series ____, _____, ____:

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: ROMEO

OPERATION ORDER

TERRAIN, WEATHER, TASK ORGANIZATION

TERRAIN and WEATHER ANALYSIS: Analyze the military aspects of the terrain and evaluate the terrain's affect on military operations.

Obstacles (Focus on assembly area [AA] and the objective [OBJ]):
    a. Existing Obstacles.
        (1) Natural: Classify the terrain.
        (2) Cultural or manmade.
    b. Reinforcing Obstacles. Along AA and around OBJ.
        (1) Tactical.
        (2) Protective.

Avenues of Approach (air/mounted/dismounted) (enemy and friendly) (to, on, and around OBJ):
    a. Mobility corridors (MC) that make up AA.
    b. Unit size that can use each MC.
    c. Width of MC.
    d. Rate of movement of unit using MC.

Key Terrain (provides a marked advantage to whoever occupies it). It usually controls the following:
    a. Obstacle.
    b. AA or MC.
    c. OBJ. (The OBJ is always key terrain.)

NOTE: If it is considered decisive terrain, retaining it or controlling it is the difference between mission accomplishment and failure—it is unique and not present in every situation.

Observation/Fields of Fire:
    a. Observation along AA/MCs, key terrain, and OBJ (identify intervisibility [IV] lines).
    b. Fields of fire along AA/MC, key terrain, and onto the OBJ. Discuss all organic weapon systems and those you will have in support.

Cover and Concealment:
    a.   Along AA/MC.
    b.   Key terrain.

Weather: (Discuss the <u>effects on friendly and enemy </u>in your AI/AO) for example, how does it affect your mission?
    Visibility: Does it favor attacker or defender (Illumination percentage and so forth).
    Wind: Speed and direction (effects obscuration and NBC).
    Precipitation: Effects on trafficability, visibility, NBC, and smoke.
    Cloud Cover: Effects on aviation, visibility, laser-guided munitions. Certain conditions enhance smoke and chemical use.
    Temperature: Effects on personnel and equipment use. Air density affects aviation payloads and smoke operations.

Task Organization:

    HQ/B/1-25 IN   _1_/B/1-25 IN   __2/B/1-25 IN   _3_/B/1-25 IN

1. SITUATION
    a.   Enemy Forces.
        (1) General Situation: The battalion is opposed by forces loyal to eastern Beta Republic Insurgent (BPI) leader Bashayev who are occupying positions in critical areas in the western Alpha Republic. These forces are supporting terrorist activity throughout the _____ mountain area and have recently been linked to an unidentified international terrorist group. ARFOR believes that Bashayev has directed this occupation of the city of Goodnews Heights in an attempt to bring coalition forces into direct combat operations with his fighters. Bashayev hopes to create mass US casualties, increase the collateral damage within the Alpha Republic, and force coalition forces to deal with the civilian population in a violent manner. In March of 20xx, four US soldiers were attacked and killed by unknown assailants within the borders of Alpha Republic. There were strong indications that these gunmen came from the area in southern Beta Republic known as Cheaply and were loyal to known terrorists operating in the area. In that same month, Alpha Republic security forces lost several engagements with terrorist mercenary unit (TMU) separatists and subsequently began a withdrawal of their forces to a point 10 miles north of the city of Akusk.
        (2) Composition: The enemy in eastern Alpha Republic is believed to be from Bashayev's own elite TMU. The TMU have followed Bashayev since his participation in the Soviet-Afghanistan conflict and are considered one of the most combat-hardened elements in the world. We can expect them to maintain control of key areas for as long as they possibly can. Bashayev intends to maintain his core group of fighters for use later. These fighters are key to his role within the Beta Republic resistance as they provide him with prestige within the Terrorist Council that currently run the conflict. Bushayev maintains his personal reserve/security force, which consists of a mix of technical vehicles (surburban with MG) and BTRs and 15 soldiers.
        (3) Disposition and Strength: The S2 estimates that there will be at least 25 enemy personnel defending the buildings within OBJ RED in the vicinity of ___. Most of the enemy force is defending from the mass constructed buildings (#1, #2, #3) on OBJ RED in the vicinity of ___. The battalion reconnaissance platoon identified several OPs on the outskirts of OBJ RED in the vicinity of ___ as they attempted to enter the area. Several pickup trucks with machine guns and AT hunter-killer teams have been spotted moving in the vicinity of OBJ RED in the vicinity of ___. There is one 82-mm mortar providing indirect fire support from outside OBJ RED area limits in the vicinity of ____ and another somewhere on the objective itself. Local supporters of the terrorist group have been spotted in the area and a few are suspected of providing intelligence and observing/adjusting mortar fire for the enemy. The enemy has snipers occupying some of the higher buildings (#8, #11, #20) in OBJ BLUE in the vicinity of _____.
        (4) Capabilities: The enemy has the ability to use sympathetic civilians as sources of intelligence. These civilians may be able to relay information to Basheyev's forces by cell phone and runners. The truck-mounted forces are able to reinforce BPI forces on OBJ RED within 10 minutes if these forces are conducting mounted patrols. OPs are able to reinforce BPI forces on OBJ RED within 15 minutes.

Local supporters and allied terrorist groups will reinforce BPI forces within 30 minutes, but their actions will be uncoordinated. BPI forces will use field-expedient barriers to block the streets and inside buildings, especially in narrow hallways and stairwells. The enemy has no chemical capabilities with their mortars. BPI forces have limited supplies and will use local resources for sustainment. BPI forces are using cell phones as primary means of communications. If the enemy's positions are no longer tenable (for example, they are surrounded), they will look to evade US forces by using any mobility corridor available. Expect the enemy to use heavy psychological and information operations against an attacking force. It is not uncommon for the enemy to use civilians as shields. There is no limit to the enemy's use of brutality to attain a desired psychological result. BPI forces have digital cameras and will broadcast events over the internet. BPI forces seek international media attention.

(5) Most Probable Course of Action: BPI forces intend to gain complete control of the city of Goodnews Heights, to include its APOD, public and private property, rejection of establishment of law and order, a legitimate military, and free and fair elections of a local government. The enemy's intent is to use the city as a power base for further political and military actions against the Beta Republic government. The enemy does not recognize the law of land warfare. BPI forces will establish a strongpoint defense in buildings 1, 2, and 3 – and attempt to destroy US forces. BPI forces want to maintain their defense positions long enough to ensure that US casualties are inflicted – ideally these engagements would be broadcasted on international media outlets, thus allowing the BPI cause to gain international recognition. BPI mounted forces will be used to mass against US forces trapped in BPI kill zones. Mortars will be used to target civilians or to target massed US formations. If Bushavev believes his personal reserve can cause mass casualties against US forces, he may choose to commit this force. End state for BPI forces is US casualties inflicted and broadcasted, civilian casualties inflicted if it appears as though US forces committed these civilian casualties, BPI forces withdrawal to be able to continue to engage US forces in the future.

b. Friendly Forces.

(1) Battalion Mission: (___) Battalion conducts an attack NLT (date/time) to destroy enemy forces on OBJ EAGLE (GRID location) (OBJ RED, WHITE, and BLUE) in order to pass 2-67 IN (BDE ME) along MSR _____ to seize OBJ RAVEN.

(2) Battalion Commander's Intent:
- MSR _____ cleared in zone.
- Enemy forces destroyed on OBJ EAGLE.
- Begin isolation of the south side of the buildings on OBJ RAVEN through obscuration and accurate direct fire.

(3) Concept: The battalion executes a penetration of OBJ EAGLE. The decisive point of this operation is the destruction of enemy forces on OBJ RED. This is decisive because destruction of the enemy on OBJ RED allows the safe passage of 2-67 IN along MSR _____ to OBJ RAVEN. One company seizes OBJ WHITE in order to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires on (_) Company and to pass the main effort through OBJ BLUE. One company seizes OBJ BLUE in order to pass the battalion main effort. One company (ME) seizes OBJ RED to pass the brigade main effort onto OBJ RAVEN. The purpose of fires is to disrupt enemy forces in order to facilitate the battalion's movement. Initially, the purpose of engineers goes to mobility (breach enemy obstacles), and then shifts to countermobility (disrupting enemy counterattacks) during consolidation and reorganization.

Endstate: Enemy forces destroyed. City Hall (BLDG #2) and radio station (BLDG #7) secured, Friendly forces postured at key intersections (3d Ave and March Street, 4th Ave and Park Street) and to facilitate the passage of 2-67 IN.

(4) Left Unit's Mission: NA

(5) Right Unit's Mission: Team C, 1-79 IN suppresses enemy forces on OBJ EAGLE NLT ____ in order to prevent the enemy from placing direct fires on ___ Co. On order, suppress from SBF position to prevent fires on ___ Co. On order, suppress from SBF position to prevent fires on 2-67 IN.

(6) Front/Rear Unit's Mission: 2-67 IN attacks along MSR _____ to destroy enemy forces on OBJ RAVEN.

2. MISSION
B/1-25 IN attacks to Seize OBJ RED NLT _____ in order to return control of Olympia Village to host nation authorities and restore order to the local area. O/O, pass 2-67 IN along MSR _____ in order to continue the restoration of order to the local area.

3. **EXECUTION**
   Company Commander's Intent:
   - Clear enemy forces on OBJ RED.
   - Block enemy mounted counterattacks.
   - Clear MSR _____ from BLDG #7 to BLDG #3.
   - Pass 2-67 IN west along MSR _____ by providing obscuration and accurate direct fire coverage.
   - Company ___ controls BLDGs #1, #3, #4 and #6 and is prepared to resume offensive operations.

   a. Concept of the Operation: We will conduct a penetration of OBJ RED. The decisive point of this operation is the seizure of BLDG #3. This is decisive because its seizure will allow us to control the objective and facilitate passing 2-67 IN. One PLT, the main effort, attacks to Seize BLDG #3 in order to return control of Olympia Village to host nation authorities and restore order to the local area. One PLT clears BLDGs #6 and #1 in order to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires onto the company main effort as it seizes BLDG #3. One PLT seizes BLDGs #4 and #5 in order to establish a SBF position in order to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires upon the company main effort as it seizes BLDG #3. The purpose of fires is to disrupt a mounted counterattack, then to destroy repositioning dismounts. The purpose of engineers is mobility, then countermobility. The endstate of this operation is when the company is in control of OBJ RED and is situated to pass follow-on forces along MSR _____ and to continue the attack.

   (1) Maneuver:

   (a) ____PLT, (ME), Seizes BLDG #3 in order to return control of Olympia Village to host nation authorities and restore order to the local area.

   (b) ____PLT clears BLDGs #6 and #1 in order to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires onto the company main effort as it seizes BLDG #3.

   (c) ____PLT seizes BLDGs #5 and #4 in order to establish a SBF position and prevent the enemy from placing effective fires upon the company main effort as it seizes BLDG #3.

   (2) Scheme of Maneuver: The company will move along DOA ____ to AA ____ in a _____, platoons in _____. We will be third in the battalion order of movement on DOA ____. The company will SP once __ Co has cleared BLDG #11 and __Co has cleared BLDG #20. Order of movement along DOA ____ within the company will be__ PLT, HQ Black, __ PLT, __ PLT (Main Effort), Company Reserve. The lead element will move in _____ with the following units moving in _____. Once our company reaches OBJ Blue, the lead element __ PLT will contact __Co Guide in order to facilitate passage on DOA ____. Once __ PLT reaches BLDG #6, __ PLT will _____, PLT (ME) will____ (state control measures that depict how the company will subsequently seize the OBJ).

   (3) Fires:

   Task: Disrupt the ability of enemy forces from effectively reinforcing OBJ RED during the attack.

   Purpose: To facilitate the seizure of OBJ RED.

   Method: Priority of fires is to SE 1 then ME. _____PLT is allocated (1) 105-mm priority target, KC2006. ___PLT is allocated (1) 81-mm priority target, KC2005 (VT-HE). Rounds will be observed by FSO (primary), ____PLT FSO (alternate). Restrictions: no use of DPICM on objectives. Use of illumination and WP requires TF CDR's approval. HE fires restricted to VT, proximity, or time fuses.

   Effects: Movement of mounted reinforcement disrupted and dismounted enemy destroyed.

   (4) Engineer: The purpose of engineers is mobility, then countermobility. The engineer _____, on order, clears MSR ____ from BLDGs #7 to #3 and facilitates the forward passage of lines of 2-67 IN (M). The priority of all engineering is first to mobility, and then countermobility. Priority of engineer effort will be ___ PLT, ____ PLT, and then ____ PLT. MOPMs minefields are the only FASCAM authorized for this operation with the BN CDR controlling the execution authority for use. No obstacles will be emplaced within 250 meters of MSR _____.

   b. Tasks to Maneuver Units:

   (1) ____PLT (ME):

   (a) Seize BLDGs #2 and #3.

   (b) Establish SBF Position in order to support 2-67 IN attack.

(2) ____ PLT:

(a) Clears BLDGs #6 and #1 in order to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires onto the company main effort as it seizes BLDG #3.

(b) Coordinate with C Co for passage of OBJ White.

(3) ___ PLT:

(4) ___ PLT:

c. Tasks to Combat Support Units:

(1) Engineer _____.

(2) Mortar ____.

(3) Medics_____.

d. Coordinating Instructions:

(1) Order effective _____.

(2) CCIR:

PIR.

FFIR.

(3) Risk Reduction Measures:

(4) ROE:

(5) Order of movement.

(6) Markings.

(7) Signals.

(8) Timeline:

LD.

ATK.

OPORD.

Rehearsals.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT

a. General: IAW the battalion TSOP. Priority of support during all phases to ____PLT, ____ PLT, ____ PLT in order.

b. Materiel and Services:

(1) Emergency resupply provided after H - Hour upon request.

(2) Classes of supply required for operation:

Class I - Subsistence Items.

Class II - Individual and organizational equipment.

Class III - Petroleum, oils, and lubricants.

Class IV - Construction materials.

Class V - Ammunition.

Class VIII - Medical material.

Class IX - Repair parts and components.

(3) Services: Evacuation of remains per BN TSOP.

(4) Maintenance: IAW BN TSOP.

c. Medical Treatment and Evacuation: 1SG provides medical evacuation IAW BN TSOP.

d. Personnel:

(1) Critical MOS shortages will not be filled.

(2) Medical RTDs per BN TSOP.

e. Miscellaneous:

(1) Cannibalization of vehicles not authorized.

(2) Emergency destruction of materiel except Class VIII is authorized to prevent capture.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL

a. Command.

(1) Commander will move with (__) PLT.

(2) XO will move with (___) PLT.

(3) 1SG will travel with company trains.

(4) Succession of Command:

Company Commander.

                    Executive Officer.
                    Main Effort PL.
                    1st Supporting Effort PL.
                    2d Supporting Effort PL.

    b. Signal.
        (1) Current SOI in effect.
        (2) Radio listening silence is in effect until contact is made.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

_____
Commander

OFFICIAL:

ANNEXES: Annex C: Operation Overlay (**Used for example only, Annex not attached**)
                  Appendix 1: Olympia Village Aerial Photo (**Example only, Appendix not attached**)
                  Appendix 2: Objectives Red, White, and Blue Graphics (**Example Only, Appendix not attached**)

APPENDIX C - ENEMY ANALYSIS

C-1. <u>**General.**</u> It is the leader's responsibility to know his enemy. Knowing your enemy means conducting a brief analysis of the enemy, the weather conditions, and terrain. This assists in gaining situational understanding (SU) of the enemy's most probable courses of action, his strengths, and his weaknesses. The end result of this analysis will be a sketch or graphic of the enemy's probable courses of action, a brief statement of enemy capabilities, and a determination of the company commander's intelligence requirements. This sketch or graphic, combined with the statement provides a valuable tool for the platoon/squad leader and his subordinates in the planning and execution of their mission.

C-2. <u>**Intelligence Products.**</u> Most of the analyses of the enemy is conducted and provided to the platoon/squad leader by the company commander. Through the intelligence battlefield operating system (BOS), he has access to an extensive array of collection systems, data, and current information. During the military decision-making process and the development of the battalion and company orders, this information has been analyzed and refined. The information is normally provided in paragraph 1a of the operation plan/operation order (OPLAN/OPORD), graphics accompanying the order, the intelligence annex, and or periodic or situational updates provided in a graphic or written form. It is important to note that this information looks at the enemy from a broader perspective. It may not be precisely customized to the level of detail desired or focus on the enemy attacking in the company's area of operation (AO) or defending in their portion of the objective. This information is also the basis for battalion order and the assignment of subordinate unit missions and tasks. It is the starting point for the company commander's analysis.

C-3. <u>**Platoon/Squad Intelligence Analysis.**</u> It is the leader's responsibility to refine the information provided by higher headquarters and consider it in the context of his unit's mission. He adapts the information and situation templates (SITEMPs) or threat models and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products. Equipped with these products, the leader develops the tools and aids necessary for his mission planning. The focus of his analysis should be to determine four critical factors:

- HOW WILL HE FIGHT? - How will the enemy attempt to execute his mission against us, *or* how will the enemy attempt to prevent us from accomplishing our mission?

- WHAT CAN HE DO TO ME? - What are his strengths? How can we avoid or counteract them?

- WHAT CAN I DO TO HIM? - What are his weaknesses or vulnerabilities? How can we exploit them? What can we maneuver against or shoot at? What actions or targets provide the highest pay-off?

- WHAT IS (ARE) MY PRIORITY INTELLIGENCE REQUIREMENT (PIR)? - What do we need to know that will successfully assist us in accomplishing our mission with minimum expenditure or loss of resources?

This is a dynamic process. Every discovery, report, or new piece of information has the potential to create additional questions. The leader, however, has a limited amount of time for his analysis, planning, and preparation. He should conduct his initial analysis with the resources and information available. As new or additional information continues to develop and his SU is refined, the leader may alter the details of his OPLAN/OPORD.

C-4. <u>**How Will He Fight?**</u> The first step of the analysis should examine how the enemy would prefer to execute his mission. The enemy-armed force being faced may have well-developed doctrine. They train their soldiers and leaders to employ these tactics and techniques. A less sophisticated enemy force may have demonstrated a preference for organizational styles, specific tactics, or operating techniques. These tactics and techniques may have been documented in use against other armed forces or during previous engagements. Like the US Army, most forces train to conduct operations in a standard manner. These expected organizations, preferences, or actions provide the tools for doctrinal analysis. Realities of the battlefield must be added to the doctrinal analysis. These realities may include knowledge or assumptions

about the enemy's current location, actual force composition, and strengths. Combining these factors provide an understanding of how he may fight in this engagement or situation.

a. Armies organize, equip, and train to fight. Established armed forces tend to have defined force structures and adopt standard methods of conducting combat operations. Irregular forces also adopt organizational principles and methods. Both are trained to execute these operations. A "doctrinal analysis" can be conducted with a basic understanding of the normal organization and tactics of an opposing force.

(1) For many established armed forces, the doctrine and tactics are meticulously documented. Doctrinal templates are or can be developed to provide a visual representation to scale, of various tactical operations. Critical times, frontages, depths, objectives, deployment lines, and probable array of forces can be determined. For example, knowing that a motorized rifle regiment from a specific threat will conduct an attack, allows a full doctrinal template to be developed. This template or template set shows how the threat intends to fight.

(2) The organizations, formations, or methods of irregular forces are also predictable. Total numbers of equipment, exact organization, and tactical proficiency may depend on availability and recruitment. Most military or paramilitary organizations adopt patterns. For example, the actual number of "technical vehicles" in a company may vary based on the number of trucks or sport utility vehicles and heavy machine guns or antitank launchers available. Intelligence sources, however, may have confirmed that a company-sized unit generally has ten vehicles. Their preferred formation for movement is a file or staggered file with the chief or commander in the second vehicle and the deputy/second in command in the trail vehicle. Irregular forces generally adopt methods for other operations as well. Ambushes, kidnappings, bank robberies, and security for "safe houses" all take on details that are similar. These predictable techniques and tactics provide a "doctrinal template" for their actions.

(3) These doctrinal templates must be overlaid on the AO and adjusted for terrain and weather. This adjustment can be made using IPB products or map inspection. Templates can be modified to account for actual constraints brought about by terrain and weather conditions. For example, steep slopes, dense vegetation, streambeds, or marshes will alter standard formations and movement rates. Urban terrain imposes unique conditions. Sun-dried salt flats may provide wide avenues for attack, while seasonal rains may limit attack frontages to a two-lane causeway. Weather conditions also have an impact on visibility, target tracking, and command and control. Dust or darkness has a major impact on forces with only a limited distribution of early generation night vision or infrared systems. Forces with a broad distribution of night vision and thermal systems may operate in darkness and limited visibility, much as they do in daylight. Once adjusted, these modified doctrinal templates assist in predicting how and where the enemy will deploy, formations he will assume, positioning of critical assets, command elements, rates of movement, etc.

(4) Given no other information, this modified doctrinal template can provide fair assessment of how the enemy force can be expected to conduct an operation. The examination of other information, however, can further refine the modified doctrinal templates.

b. Information on the composition, strength, capabilities, and disposition of the enemy may be available to the company/team commander. Analysis of each of these factors can refine the leader's SU and his template.

(1) A review of the composition of forces provides details of what the enemy can bring against the company. Composition may confirm the organization of enemy units and reveal the resources and units available to reinforce or support his operations. It may also reveal limitations of the force that can become vulnerabilities. For example, knowing that an attacking force has limited engineer breaching assets can make engineer efforts of greater value. The leader should

consider forces by BOS and add to, or remove elements from the modified doctrinal template as the result of his analysis.

(2) A review of the known strengths of enemy forces provides details of "how many" the enemy can muster against the platoon/squad. Strengths may confirm the details concerning the probable number of combat systems—tanks, armored personnel carriers/infantry combat vehicles (APCs/ICVs), antitank launchers, artillery tubes, and infantry soldiers available to the enemy force. Percentages may need to be converted to actual numbers given the composition and known data on organizational figures. Significant shortages in tank/antitank systems, low-density engineer or air defense systems, and or infantry soldiers may prove to be exploitable vulnerabilities. The modified doctrinal template should be updated to reflect expected system densities.

(3) Review of enemy capabilities provides insight into what the enemy can do within the timeframe of the platoon/squad's mission. For example, he may be capable of supporting his attack with chemical weapons, air strikes, or electronic warfare. While these capabilities are significant strengths, with appropriate precautions their effects can be mitigated. The enemy may have only limited offensive or reinforcement capability for a specific time. This time period could present both a window for prioritized preparation of the defense or an exploitable vulnerability to spoiling attacks. Few capabilities can be graphically depicted, but all should be considered.

(4) Enemy dispositions provide known locations of the enemy or enemy obstacles. While some units beyond your influence may only assist in confirming or adjusting your modified doctrinal template, others may become targets for reconnaissance, fires, or maneuver. In offensive planning, known dispositions may assist you in adjusting the accuracy of the template and in determining probable locations for un-located units, reserves, or counterattack forces. Dispositions may also identify vulnerabilities.

c. Using the resources provided in the intelligence portion of the OPLAN/OPORD and additional analysis, the leader can create his SITEMPs. It is important to consider that the enemy commander may have branches and sequels to his plan. He may have more than one plan. He may also employ deception. With these items considered, the commander now has graphic tools to support the development of his plan and for use in developing the SU of his subordinates.

C-5. **What Can He Do To Me?** The platoon/squad leader can use his SITEMP and known enemy capabilities to determine enemy strengths that he must avoid or counter. For example, speed may be essential in his attack. Knowing or templating disposition of enemy antitank systems can assist in development of suppression targets, smoke and obscurant plans, and or a probable line of deployment. In the defense, an extensive breaching and mine clearing capability may be frustrated by multiple small obstacles instead of one or two large mine fields. The leader's plan can avoid or negate enemy strengths.

C-6. **What Can I Do To Him?** Understanding and graphically depicting enemy weaknesses and vulnerabilities can improve the platoon/squad's execution of actions against them. The platoon/squad leader may have already designated high pay-off targets (HPTs). The platoon/squad leader should emphasize and supplement this list. Combat power can be focused to shoot or maneuver against enemy vulnerabilities, rapidly degrading the enemy's capabilities. Probable locations of HPTs and vulnerabilities should be added to the SITEMP.

C-7. **What Is (Are) My PIR?** Development of the SITEMP provides an opportunity for the platoon/squad leader to determine what he knows about the enemy and what he needs to know. He should review the company commander's PIR and any intelligence collection tasks assigned to his platoon/squad. His intelligence needs may be focused on specific locations, events, or times. The needs should be formulated into questions and forwarded as PIR to the company commander.

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX D - DIGITAL SUPPLEMENT

D-1. **General.** This appendix is designed to be used as a tool to introduce the army battle command system (ABCS) with special emphasis on two systems: force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2) and land warrior (LW) and their capabilities at the company/platoon/platform level. This is only a tool and is not intended to replace applicable field manuals, technical manuals, or any other how-to publications. Mission, enemy, terrain and weather, available troops and support, available time, and civil considerations (METT-TC) will drive the use of digital systems on the battlefield. This appendix is not intended to teach Soldiers how to operate digital systems but rather, how the systems when used correctly, are a command and control combat multiplier and how they interact with other digital systems.

a. Digitization is the ongoing effort to integrate the army's diversified battlefield operating systems into an information exchange network, while also enhancing the mission capabilities necessary in a multi-dimensional battlespace. The 21st century battlespace is characterized by the effective use of information technology to mass the effects of dispersed firepower, rather than relying exclusively on the physical massing of weapons and forces which was the primary method employed in the past. Digitization provides rapid sharing of enemy and friendly information among all forces within the battlespace, and it will enhance combat power by making combat forces more effective and survivable.

b. Digitization does not markedly change the way the unit plans and executes operations from a tactical perspective. However, digitized equipment, employed by highly trained and proficient Soldiers, enhances the unit's capabilities to conduct operations with greater lethality and survivability and with better command and control. The digitized unit has enhanced the capability to maneuver against the enemy and employ direct and indirect-fire weapons systems. Digitization increases friendly and enemy situational data, reduces the risk of fratricide, and increases the accuracy of fires. In addition, digitization streamlines the battlefield planning process for the leader and allows an increased tempo of combat actions.

D-2. **Army Battle Command System.** The ABCS provides for the interface of brigades and battalions with divisions and corps. The ABCS is comprised of the maneuver control system (MCS), all source analysis system (ASAS), forward area air defense command, control, and intelligence (FAAD C2I), advanced field artillery tactical data system (AFATDS), combat service support control system (CSSCS), and FBCB2. The ABCS depends on FBCB2 to receive current Blue force (friendly) and or Red force (enemy) situational data and status information. All these systems have the capability to communicate with each other to provide the commander with timely and accurate information enabling him to exercise command and control (C2) and make appropriate decisions.

D-3. **Tactical Internet.** The tactical internet (TI) systems are designed to provide real time, shared situational data. It consists of tactical radios linked with routers using commercial protocols that allow digital systems to interoperate in a dynamic battlefield environment. The TI provides the reliable, seamless communications connectivity to deliver situational and C2 data to digital systems.

a. The TI is comprised of two echelons, warfighter information network-terrestrial (WIN-T) (or upper TI) and the lower TI. Company and below operate on the lower TI. The WIN-T passes situational data and C2 between the CPs at battalion level and higher.

b. The lower TI provides digital communications capability for brigade and below. It is comprised of three primary components: the enhanced position location reporting system (EPLRS), the single-channel, ground-air radio system (SINCGARS), and the internet controller (INC). The EPLRS provides data only communication (for example, platform position information, network coordination, and data communication) capability. The SINCGARS provides data only and voice/data communications capability. The INC provides routing and interface capability.

c.   Currently, with the capability of frequency hopping, digital jamming rarely occurs. However, if the enemy has the capability to jam a barrage of frequencies (the full spectrum) then the digital equipment will not function.

D-4.   **Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below.** The FBCB2 is a digital, battle command information system that provides on-the-move, real-time C2 information to tactical combat arms, CS and CS Soldiers and leaders.

a.   The FBCB2 provides Blue force and Red force situational data down to the platform level. Blue force and Red force data include: the user's location, the location of other friendly forces, observed enemy locations, and all known battlefield obstacles. The FBCB2 consists of—

- Software for embedded tactical operations centers (TOCs).
- Hardware and software for non-embedded air and ground platforms.
- ABCS interfaces/integration.
- Supporting communication systems (SINCGARS and EPLRS).

b.   The FBCB2 receives data across the TI by way of the INC. The INC is a tactical router built into the SINCGARS radio system. The EPLRS data radio and SINCGARS data or voice radio transmit and receive digital information between vehicles. Each FBCB2 derives its own location by way of the precision lightweight global positioning system receiver (PLGR). By using these interfaces, FBCB2 automatically updates and broadcasts its current location to all other FBCB2 and embedded battle command (EBC) platforms. The EBC is a separate software package that enables FBCB2 platforms to share Blue and or Red situational data and C2 with battalion and brigade TOCs.

D-5.   **Land Warrior.** The land warrior system (LWS) is a modular, integrated fighting system for the individual infantryman.

a.   The LWS includes everything the dismounted Soldier wears and carries integrated into a close combat fighting system, which enhances his situational awareness, lethality, survivability, mobility, and sustainability. The LW is intended for use by all five types of Infantry—Ranger, Airborne, Air Assault, Light, and Mechanized. The LW integrates the Infantry warfighter into the Army's digitized battlefield network. The LWS is composed of five integrated subsystems:

- Weapon subsystem.
- Integrated helmet assembly subsystem.
- Computer/radio subsystem.
- Software subsystem.
- Protective clothing and individual equipment subsystem.

b.   The LW provides on-the-move, real-time command and control information to infantrymen and their leaders. As with FBCB2, the LWS provides Blue force and Red force situational data.

c.   The LW makes use of a global positioning system (GPS), which automatically updates and broadcasts its current location to other LWs in the area.

D-6.   **Common Operational Picture.** The common operational picture (COP) is a collection of data referenced to a geographical location and displayed on the screen of digital systems. The primary pieces of the COP are Blue force, Red force, terrain, obstacle data, and civilian activities of military concern. What the user actually sees depends on how he sets up his system. The COP is established through settings and filters. The COP settings tell the system how often to update the network with the platform's position. They also dictate how long both Blue and Red icons stay visible. The filters dialog box allows users to set which icons (unit type and echelon), overlays, labels, and geo-referenced graphics are displayed as part of the overall COP. Filter settings are a tool used to reduce screen clutter and simplify C2.

D-7. **Role Based Functionality.** Different levels of leadership place different demands on FBCB2 and LW. Both systems are designed to provide functionality based upon their configurations, such as when configured for each of the following:

- Soldier/platform/wingman.
- Squad/platoon leadership.
- Company leadership.
- Battalion/brigade leadership/staff.

D-8. **Digital Battle Command.** The principles of command and control do not change with digitization. Leaders still plan, direct, and control the operations of their unit. Digital systems enhance the leader's ability to make timely and accurate battlefield decisions by providing a timely picture of the situation. One key benefit of FBCB2 and LW is the COP. It allows the user to see the relationship of terrain, friendly forces, and enemy forces (if they are acquired and reported). Fighting on a digital battlefield requires mental agility that is acquired through realistic digital training.

   a. Both FBCB2 and LW provide C2 tools that assist leaders in the decision-making process. The C2 data is defined as all data other than situational data. There are several categories of C2 digital messages:

   - Alerts and warnings (example: nuclear, biological, chemical [NBC] reports, warnings of contaminated areas).
   - Joint support information (interfaces with other branches of service).
   - Combat reporting (example: Commander's situation report [SITREP]).
   - Mission planning information (example: operation orders [OPORDs], fragmentary orders [FRAGOs]).

   b. The FBCB2 and LW pass messages using the joint variable message format (JVMF). The JVMF is a Department of Defense (DOD) standardized message format. It prescribes uniform message formats for all branches of the armed services.

D-9. **Voice Versus Digital.** Commanders should not rely on digital communications alone. Digitization does not eliminate the requirement for maps and voice communications. The decision to use voice versus digital depends on the situation and unit tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Some message traffic should be sent digitally followed by a voice alert directing recipients to check their message queues.

   a. Voice radios remain the primary means of communication after crossing the line of departure (LD) because they are more responsive, multiple stations can monitor the net, and parties convey emotion during the transmission. These are critical tools in assessing and understanding battlefield situations. Light discipline in night operations may dictate the use of voice communications. For example, dismounted infantrymen may go to blackout operations and send spot reports by way of voice means to the company CP, which is stationary and postured to use the digital LW display while maintaining light discipline. The CP could generate and manage spot reports based on the voice radio spot reports and updates.

   b. Voice radio is recommended as the primary means of communication for:

   - Initial contact or spot reports.
   - Coordinating operations when in contact or moving.
   - Call for fire (CFF) on targets of opportunity; especially moving targets.
   - Subsequent adjustment of fires on planned and unplanned targets.
   - Urgent medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) requests.
   - Enemy air.

D-10. **Digital Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.** The following describe the digital tactics, techniques, and procedures (for example, graphics and overlays, digital messaging, and precombat checks).

a. **Graphics and Overlays.** Digital systems assist in C2 through the creation and transmission of digital graphics. Digital graphics provide excellent graphical control measures applied in battlespace management. Simplicity is the rule for effective digital graphics. Simplicity reduces file size, screen clutter, transmission time, and the volume of digital traffic.

b. **Digital Messaging.** Message handling procedures should be directed by using the unit's TSOPs. Standard message management procedures reduce confusion and extra work. Message management includes:

x7920• Message/overlay naming conventions.
- Filing procedures.
- Message precedence.
- Message use.

(1) There is a relationship between the long form and the short/combat form messages. When selected from the long form creation dialog box, the following messages default to the short/combat message input screen:

- Medical evacuation.
- Call for fire.
- Check fire.
- End of mission and surveillance.
- On call fire command.
- Subsequent adjust.
- NBC 1.
- Spot report.
- Situation reports.

(2) The long form message affords the user more detail when known or required. Role based functionality provides different message creation capabilities based on the users' role or echelon (all roles can receive/read incoming messages). Users can preview messages in textual format while in the process of creating or editing the long form message.

c. **Precombat Checks.** The precombat checks (PCCs) are a critical part of a unit's combat readiness. PCCs should be standardized and part of a unit TSOP. Some suggested PCCs for a digital unit are—

- Message folders established.
- Message address groups established.
- Message transmission settings for all message types set (default settings should not be deleted).
- Correct Blue and Red filter settings.
- Correct "Own Settings."
- Correct GPS, SINCGARS, and or EPLRS fills and settings.
- MEDEVAC call signs and frequency set in "Platform Setting Dialog Box."
- Perform a communications check by verifying your server. (Users should also send a message with a Machine Acknowledgement required to verify the Net is working properly.)
- Clear all queues and logs.

GLOSSARY

Section I
Acronyms & Abbreviations

REDCON   readiness condition

SAW   squad automatic weapon

tm; TM   team; technical manual

Section II
Terms

1SG
first sergeant

AA
assembly area

AAR
after-action review

ABCS
Army battle command system

ACADA
Automatic Chemical Agent Detector & Alarm

ADA
air defense artillery

AFATDS
Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System

AO
area of operation

APOE
aerial port of embarkation

ARTEP
Army Training and Evaluation Program

ASAS
All Source Analysis System

ATCCS
Army Tactical Command and Control System

AUEL
automated unit equipment list

bde
brigade

BFA
battlefield functional area; blank firing attachment

BHL
battle handover line

bn
battalion

C3
command, control, and communications

CATS
combined arms training strategy

co; CO
company

COA
course of action

Combined Arms Training Strategy
The Army's overarching strategy for the current and future training of the force. Its basis is a series of branch proponent unit and institutional strategies describing training events, frequencies, and resources required to train to standard. These strategies describe how the Army will train the total force to standard in the institutions and unit and through self development. CATS also documents the quantity, and justification for all training resources required to execute the training. See "Training strategy. "

COMSEC
communications security

COP
common operational picture

CP
command post

CS
combat support

CSS
combat service support

CSSCS
Combat Service Support Control System

CTA
common table of allowance

DA
Department of the Army

DA Form
Department of the Army Form

DD Form
Department of the Defense Form

decon
decontaminate; decontamination

div
division

DoD
Department of Defense

DRS
Digital Reconnaissance System

DSSU
Dismounted Soldier System Unit

DST
decision support template

DZ
drop zone

e.g.
Exempli Gratia (Latin: for example)

ea; EA
engagement area

EBC
embedded battle command

ECTL
essential collective task list

EPLRS
enhanced position locating reporting system

EPW
enemy prisoner of war

ERC
equipment readiness code

EW
electronic warfare

EW
electronic warfare

FAAD C2I
forward area air defense command, control, and intelligence

FBCB2
Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below

FDC
fire direction center

FIPR
flash immediate priority routine

FM
field manual; frequency modulated (radio)

FOD
foreign object damage

FRAGO
fragmentary order

FTX
field training exercise

GPS
global positioning system

HAZMAT
hazardous material

HPT
high-payoff target

HQ
headquarters

HVT
high value target

IAW
in accordance with

ID
identification

in; IN
Infantry

INC
internet controller

ISU
integrated sight unit

KIA
killed in action

LBE
load-bearing equipment

LD
line of departure

live-fire exercise
An exercise designed to allow a unit/team to engage targets with its organic weapons and support.

LNO
liaison officer

LOGPAC
logistics package

LP
listening post

LZ
landing zone

MA
marshalling area

MAPEX
map exercise

MBA
main battle area

MCS
Maneuver Control System

MEDEVAC
medical evacuation

METL
mission-essential task list

METT-TC
mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations

MFCS
Mortar Fire Control System

MG
machine gun

MIJI
meaconing intrusion jamming interference

MILES
multiple integrated laser engagement system

mm
millimeter

MOBPLAN
mobilization plan

MOI
Memorandum of Instruction

MOPMS
Modular Pack Mine System

MOPP
mission-oriented protective posture

MRB
Motorized Rifle Battalion

MRC
Motorized Rifle Company

MRE
meal, ready-to-eat

MTOE
modified table of organization and equipment

MTOE
modified table of organization and equipment

MTP
mission training plan

NBC
nuclear, biological, and chemical

NLT
not later than

NLT
not later than

OB
order of battle

obj
objective

OEG
operational exposure guidance

OP
observation post

OPFOR
opposing force

OPLAN
operation plan

OPORD
operation order

OPSEC
operations security

PEWS
Platoon Early Warning System

PIR
priority intelligence requirement

PL
phase line

PMCS
preventive maintenance checks and services

POD
port of debarkation

POE
port of embarkation

POSNAV
position navigation

PSG
platoon sergeant

PZ
pickup zone

REC
radio electronic combat

ROE
rules of engagement

ROI
rules of interaction

ROM
refuel on the move

RP
release point

RSID
radio set identification

SALUTE
size, activity, location, unit, time, equipment

SATS
Standard Army Training System

SBF
support by fire

SCATMINE
scatterable mine

SD
self destruct

SINCGARS
single-channel ground-air radio system

SINCGARS
single-channel ground-air radio system

SITREP
situation report

situational training exercise
A short scenario driven mission-oriented tactical exercise that provides a vehicle to train a group of closely related collective tasks and drills together. Situational training exercises provide preconstructed, bite-sized, short-term exercises that are central to sustainment training for tactical mission proficiency.

SM
soldier's manuals

SOI
signal operating instructions

SOP
standing operating procedure

SP
start point

SPOTREP
spot report

STP
soldier training plan

STRAC
Standards in Training Commission

STRIKWARN
strike warning

STX
situational training exercise

SU
situational understanding

SUM
Software Users Manual

T&EO
training and evaluation outline

TACFIRE
tactical fire

TBP
to be published

TC
training circular

TEWT
tactical exercise without troops

TI
tactical internet

tlp
troop-leading procedures

TOE
table of organization and equipment

TOE
table of organization and equipment

TRADOC
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

TSOP
tactical standing operating procedure

TTP
tactics, techniques, and procedures

UAV
unmanned aerial vehicle

UBL
unit basic load

UMO
unit movement officer

UPW
Unit Proficiency Worksheet

URN
unit role number

US
United States

UTO
unit task organization

UTR
unit task reorganization

UW
unconventional warfare

VC
vehicle commander

vic
in the vicinity of

WARNO
warning order

WIN-T
warrior information network - terrestrial

XO
executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 350-41	Training in Units 19 March 1993
AR 385-63	Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training, Target Practice and Combat 15 October 1983
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine 15 October 1990

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 7-90-DRILL	Battle Drills for the Infantry Mortar Platoon, Section, and Squad 26 July 2002

Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record
DA FORM 2188-R	Data Sheet
DA FORM 2399-R	Computer's Record
DA FORM 2404	Equipment Inspection And Maintenance Worksheet
DA FORM 5988-E	Equipment Maintenance and Inspection Worksheet (Automated)
DA FORM 7502	Task Summary Sheet
DA FORM 7503	Environmental Data Sheet
DA FORM 7504	Personnel and Equipment Loss Report
DA FORM 7505	Unit Data Sheet
DA FORM 7506	Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet
DA FORM 7507	ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag
DD FORM 1380	US Field Medical Card

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 350-100	Extension Training Materials Consolidated MOS Catalog 19 March 1990
DA PAM 350-38	STANDARDS IN WEAPONS TRAINING 15 February 1993
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DOD REGULATION 4500.9-R	Defense Transportation Regulation, Parts II 1 April 1996

Field Manuals

FM 100-14	Risk Management 23 April 1998
FM 100-17	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization 28 October 1992
FM 100-55	Reconnaissance Operations
FM 100-6	Information Operations 27 August 1996

FM 10-14-1	Commander's Handbook for Property Accountability at Unit Level 2 November 1984
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics 30 September 1997
FM 101-5-2	US Army Report and Message Formats 29 June 1999
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply And Services For Unit Leaders 14 April 2000
FM 1-113	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations 12 September 1997
FM 17-98	Scout Platoon 10 April 1999
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons 27 February 1976
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment and Decoys 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation 21 June 2000
FM 21-18	Foot Marches 1 June 1990
FM 21-60	Visual Signals 30 September 1987
FM 23-91	Mortar Gunnery 1 March 2000
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Airland Battle 15 October 1990
FM 24-12	Communications in a "Come-As-You-Are" War 17 July 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook 24 May 1991
FM 24-35	Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI" 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	Signal Supplemental Instructions 2 October 1990
FM 25-4	How to Conduct Training Exercises 10 September 1984
FM 25-5	Training for Mobilization and War 25 January 1985
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals 8 May 1996
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance 16 November 1992
FM 3-4	NBC Protection 29 May 1992
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance 19 June 1991
FM 34-40-7	Communications Jamming Handbook 23 November 1992
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination 28 July 2000
FM 3-7	NBC Field Handbook 29 September 1994
FM 4-25.11	First Aid 23 December 2002
FM 44-8	Combined Arms For The Air Defense 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition 30 September 1996
FM 5-20	Camouflage 30 July 1998
FM 55-10	Movement Control 9 February 1999
FM 55-15	Transportation Reference Data 27 October 1997
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations 27 June 1997
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning 5 April 1993
FM 6-30	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire 16 July 1991
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company 14 December 1990
FM 71-2	The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force 27 September 1988
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion 6 April 1992
FM 7-4 (3-21.94)	The IBCT Infantry Battalion Reconnaissance Platoon
FM 7-5 (3-21.9)	The IBCT Infantry Platoon and Squad

FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC) 15 March 1985
FM 7-7J	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley) 7 May 1993
FM 7-8	The Infantry Platoon and Squad 22 April 1992
FM 7-85	Ranger Unit Operations 9 June 1987
FM 7-90	Tactical Employment of Mortars 9 October 1992
FM 7-91	Tactical Employment of Antiarmor Units 30 September 1987
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad 23 December 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 14 April 2000
FM 90-2	Battlefield Deception 3 October 1988
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operations 16 March 1987

Graphic Training Aids

| GTA 07-01-017 | Mortar Fire Without a Fire Direction Center 1 November 1968 |

Soldier Training Publications

| STP 21-1-SMCT | Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1 31 August 2003 |
| STP 21-24-SMCT | Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) SKILL LEVELS 2-4 31 August 2003 |

Technical Manuals

TM 9-1010-223-10	Operator's Manual for Lightweight Company Mortar, 60-mm: M224 18 December 1987
TM 9-1010-223-20&P	Organizational Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Mortar, 60 mm, Lightweight Company, M224 (NSN 1010-01-020-5626) 27 March 1981
TM 9-1015-200-10	Operator's Manual for Mortar, 81-mm, M29A1 23 October 1985
TM 9-1015-200-20&P	Organizational Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for 81-mm Mortar, M29A1 25 October 1985
TM 9-1015-215-10	Operator's Manual for 4.2-inch Mortar, M30 15 December 1993
TM 9-1015-249-10	Operator's Manual for Mortar, 81-mm, M252 30 October 1987
TM 9-1015-250-10	Operator's Manual for Mortar, 120mm: Towed M120 and Mortar, 120mm, Carrier-Mounted M121 19 August 1996
TM 9-1315-249-12&P	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for 81-mm Mortar Training Device, 81-mm Sabot (Inert) M1, and 22-mm Subcaliber Practice Cartridges M744, M745, M746, and M747 1 September 1990
TM 9-2320-280-10	OPERATORS MANUAL FOR TRUCK, UTILITY: CARGO/TROOP CARRIER M998 SERIES 31 January 1996
TM 9-2350-261-10	OPERATOR'S MANUAL FOR CARRIER, PERSONNEL, FULL TRACKED, ARMORED, M113A2 12 July 1990
TM 9-2350-277-10	Operators Manual for M113 Track Vehicle 1 July 1994
TM 9-6920-212-24P	Organizational, Direct and General Support Maintenance Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Trainer, Mortar: Pneumatic, M32 W/E and M32A1 W/E 15 October 1971

Training Aids

| TASC-303-TAD110 | TNG DEVICE, SIGHT, MORTAR, M53 |

Training Circulars

TC 25-6   Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training Proponent 3 October 1995

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support 3 October 1995
FM 100-5	Operations 14 June 1993
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management 18 April 1996
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons 27 February 1976
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations 29 May 1998
FM 21-26	Map Reading and Land Navigation 7 May 1993
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols 17 June 1961
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier 3 August 1984
FM 23-91	Mortar Gunnery 1 March 2000
FM 24-16	Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports 7 April 1978
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques 30 September 1987
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-countermeasures 17 July 1990
FM 25-100	Training The Force 15 November 1988
FM 27-10	The Law of Land Warfare 18 July 1956
FM 3-06	Urban Operations 1 June 2003
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals 8 May 1996
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination 28 July 2000
FM 4-25.11	First Aid 23 December 2002
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions 30 July 1998
FM 6-20	Fire Support in the AirLand Battle 17 May 1988
FM 7-7J	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley) 7 May 1993
FM 7-8	The Infantry Platoon and Squad 22 April 1992

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

SANDRA R. RILEY
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0507001

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.

This page intentionally left blank.